European Aviation Safety Agency

Certification Specifications and Acceptable Means of Compliance for

Airborne Communications, Navigation and Surveillance

CS-ACNS

Initial Issue
17 December 2013¹

¹ For the date of entry into force of this Amendment, kindly refer to Decision 2013/031/R in the Official Publication of the Agency.
CONTENTS
CS ACNS - Airborne Communications, Navigation and Surveillance

BOOK 1
Subpart A — General.................................................................................................................. 4
Subpart B — Communications (COM)....................................................................................... 9
Subpart C — Navigation (NAV) .............................................................................................. 17
Subpart D — Surveillance (SUR) ............................................................................................ 18
Subpart E — Others ............................................................................................................... 30

BOOK 2
Subpart A — General.................................................................................................................. 40
Subpart B — Communications (COM)....................................................................................... 42
Subpart C — Navigation (NAV) .............................................................................................. 60
Subpart D — Surveillance (SUR) ............................................................................................ 61
Subpart E — Others ............................................................................................................... 136
CS-ACNS

Book 1
Certification Specifications
Subpart A — General

CS ACNS.A.GEN.001 Applicability

These Certification Specifications are applicable to all aircraft for the purpose of compliance with equipage requirements with respect to on-board Communication, Navigation and Surveillance systems. Furthermore, compliance with the appropriate section of these Certification Specifications ensures compliance with the following European regulations:


(b) Commission Regulation (EU) No 1207/2011, of 22 November 2011 laying down requirements for the performance and the interoperability for surveillance for the single European sky; and


(d) Commission Regulation (EC) No 29/2009 of 16 January 2009 laying down requirements on data link services for the Single European Sky; and


CS ACNS.A.GEN.005 Definitions

This section contains the definitions of terms used in these Certification Specifications and not defined in CS-definitions.

ICAO 24-bit Aircraft Address means a technical address used by Mode S protocols to identify the transponder on the 1030/1090 Mhz RF network. Each aircraft uses a unique 24-bit aircraft address allocated by their state of registry. This address may also be used by other types of avionics equipment for other purpose.

Advisory Alerts means the level or category of alert for conditions that require flight crew awareness and may require subsequent flight crew response.

ADS-B means automatic dependent surveillance - broadcast, a surveillance technique in which aircraft automatically provide, via a data link, data derived from on-board navigation and position-fixing systems. It refers to a surveillance technology where ADS-B Out equipped aircraft broadcast position, altitude, velocity, and other information in support of both air-to-ground and air-to-air surveillance applications.

ADS-B Device Failure refers to a condition announced to the flight crew whereby the ADS-B transmit unit is unable to transmit ADS-B messages.

ADS-B Function Failure refers to a condition announced to the flight crew whereby the position source(s) or interconnecting avionics fail to provide horizontal position data to the ADS-B transmit unit.

ADS-B Out system refers to the overall set of avionics that generate, transport, process, and transmit ADS-B data.

ADS-B Transmit Unit refers to that part of the ADS-B Out system that resides within the transponder and transmits 1090 MHz ES ADS-B data, including the data processing within that system.
Aircraft Identification means an alphanumeric chain that contains information allowing operational identification of individual flights. It contains either the Aircraft Identification as registered in item 7 of the flight plan or the aircraft registration if no flight plan has been filed.

Airship means a power-driven lighter-than-air aircraft.

Alert means a generic term used to describe a flight deck indication meant to attract the attention of and identify to the flight crew a non-normal operational or aeroplane system condition. Alerts are classified at levels or categories corresponding to Warning, Caution, and Advisory. Alert indications also include non-normal range markings (for example, exceedances on instruments and gauges).

Altimetry System Error (ASE) refers to the difference between the altitude indicated by the altimeter display, assuming a correct altimeter barometric setting, and the pressure altitude corresponding to the undisturbed ambient pressure.

ATN B1 means Aeronautical Telecommunication Network Build 1.

ATS communications management service (ACM) means a service that provides automated assistance to flight crews and air traffic controllers for conducting the transfer of ATC communications (voice and data).

ATS Clearance and Information service (ACL) means a service that provides flight crews and controllers with the ability to conduct operational exchanges.

ATS microphone check service (AMC) means a service that provides air traffic controllers with the capability to send an instruction to one or several data link equipped aircraft, at the same time, in order to instruct flight crew(s) to verify that his/their voice communication equipment is not blocking a given voice channel.

Aural Alert means a discrete sound, tone, or verbal statement used to annunciate a condition, situation, or event.

Automatic Altitude Control System means any system that is designed to automatically control the aircraft to a referenced pressure altitude.

Barometric Altitude Rate means the rate of climb estimated by using the difference of pressure.

Barometric Pressure Setting means the barometric pressure setting used by the pilot when flying the aircraft.

Comm-B: A 112-bit Mode S reply containing a 56-bit MB message field containing the extracted transponder register.

Caution means the level or category of alert for conditions that require immediate flight crew awareness and a less urgent subsequent flight crew response than a warning alert.

Continuity (system continuity) is the probability that a system will perform its required function without unscheduled interruption, assuming that the system is available at the initiation of the intended operation.

Controlled Flight Into Terrain (CFIT) means an accident or incident in which an aircraft, under the full control of the pilot, is flown into terrain, obstacles, or water.

CPDLC is the ICAO standardised procedure for Controller-Pilot Data Link Communications. CPDLC takes the form of an application, present on both aircraft and ground-based ATC centres that provides support for the Data Link Communications Initiation Capability (DLIC), ATS communications management service (ACM), ATS Clearance and Information service (ACL) and ATS microphone check service (AMC).

Data Link is a communication technology where ‘Data Link’ equipped aircraft communicate with ‘Data Link’ capable ground units to exchange digital information (bi-directional exchange).
**Data Link Communications Initiation Capability (DLIC)** means a service that enables the exchange of the necessary information for the establishment of data link communications between the ground and aircraft data link systems.

**Data Quality Indicator** refers to integrity and/or accuracy quality metrics that are associated with some of the ADS-B Out surveillance data, in particular with the horizontal position.

**Downlink** is a transfer of information, generated by an aircraft (not necessarily airborne) and sent to the ground for further processing by an ATC Centre.

**Emergency indicators** mean specific Mode A Code values: 7500 unlawful interference, 7600 radio failure, 7700 general emergency.

**Failure condition** terms are defined in AMC 25.1309, FAA AC 23.1309-1( ), AC 27-1B or AC 29-2C.

**FANS 1/A** means Future Air Navigation System 1 or Future Air Navigation System A.,

**False Alert** means an incorrect or spurious alert caused by a failure of the alerting system including the sensor

**FMS Selected Altitude:** The level altitude used by the FMS to manage the vertical profile of the aircraft.

**Forward Looking Terrain Avoidance (FLTA)** Looks ahead of the aeroplane along and below the aeroplane’s lateral and vertical flight path and provides suitable alerts if a potential CFIT exists.

**Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS).** A worldwide position and time determination system that includes one or more satellite constellations, aircraft receivers and system integrity monitoring.

**Ground-Initiated Comm-B** means a protocol which allows the interrogator to extract Comm-B replies containing data from a defined source.

**Ground speed.** The speed of an aircraft relative to the surface, or relative to a horizontal plane at present position.

**Group Aircraft** is a group of aircraft with similar altitude keeping equipment configurations and performance characteristics that are combined together for the purposes of statistical generic performance evaluation. Typically group aircraft refers to aircraft constructed to the same Type Certificate, Service Bulletin or Supplementary Type Certificate.

**Hazard** means a state or set of conditions that together with other conditions in the environment can lead to an accident.

**Horizontal Velocity** refers to the ground speed vector information.

**Inertial Vertical Velocity** means the rate of climb measure along the axis estimated using different sources including inertial reference.

**Integrity (system integrity)** is measured as the probability per operating hour of an undetected failure of a functional element that results in corrupted (erroneous) data, or a failure in the processing as specified, leading to the (partial) loss of otherwise available data.

**Magnetic Heading** means the angle between the aircraft centreline and magnetic North (angle between the direction to which the aircraft nose is pointing and the magnetic North).

**MCP/FCU Selected Altitude** means the level selected by the flight crew on the MCP or FCU of the aircraft. This altitude constitutes the level-off target input to the auto-pilot.
Mode S Elementary Surveillance refers to the use of Mode S surveillance data to downlink aircraft information from airborne installations.

Mode S Enhanced Surveillance refers to the use of other airborne information in addition to data used for Elementary Surveillance.

Non-group aircraft refers to an aircraft that is not a group aircraft but which is submitted for airworthiness approval on the characteristics of the unique airframe.

Nuisance Alert means an alert generated by a system that is functioning as designed but which is inappropriate or unnecessary for the particular condition.

Qualitative Probability terms are defined in AMC 25.1309, FAA AC 23.1309-1( ), AC 27-1B or AC 29-2C.

Required Obstacle Clearance (ROC) means required vertical clearance expressed in ft between an aircraft and an obstruction.

Required Terrain Clearance (RTC) A Terrain Awareness and Warning System (TAWS) FLTA mode that alerts when the aeroplane is above the terrain in the aeroplane’s projected flight path, but the projected amount of terrain clearance is considered unsafe for the particular phase of flight.

Roll Angle means the angle of wings compared to horizon representing the angle of rotation around the roll axis going along the centreline of the aircraft.

RVSM Flight Envelope may be considered to be in two parts; the basic RVSM flight envelope and the full RVSM flight envelope. The basic envelope includes those ranges of Mach numbers and gross weights at which the aircraft can most frequently be expected to operate at RVSM levels (i.e. FL 290 to FL 410 (or maximum attainable altitude)). The full envelope refers to the entire range of Mach numbers, gross weights and altitude values that the aircraft can be operated in RVSM airspace.

RVSM operational flight envelope is the Mach number, $W/\delta$, and altitude ranges over which an aircraft can be operated in cruising flight within the RVSM airspace.

Search Volume means a volume of airspace around the aeroplane’s current and projected path that is used to define a TAWS alert condition.

Static Source Error (SSE) is the difference between the pressure sensed by the static system at the static port and the undisturbed ambient pressure.

Static Source Error Correction (SSEC) is the correction for the residual static error to ensure compliance with performance requirements.

Terrain Cell means a grid of terrain provided by the TAWS database which identifies the highest terrain elevation within a defined geographical area. Terrain cell dimensions and resolution can vary depending on the needs of the TAWS system and availability of data. If a supplier desires, obstacle height can be included in the terrain elevation.

Transponder means a device that transmits airborne surveillance data spontaneously or when requested. The transmissions are performed on 1090 MHz RF band and the interrogations are received on 1030 MHz RF band using SSR/Mode S protocols. It is also named Secondary Surveillance Radar transponder.

Track Angle Rate means the rate of change of the track angle.

Transmit refers to the provision of surveillance data by the transponder.

Transponder level means an indication of which Mode S data-link protocols are supported by a transponder. There are 5 transponder levels defined by ICAO.
Transponder register means a transponder data buffer containing different pieces of information. It has 56 bits which are split in different fields. The definition of the transponder registers can be found in ICAO Doc 9871 edition 2 and in transponder MOPS ED-73E with the ICAO document being the reference document in case of conflict. Transponder registers are numbered in hexadecimal (00hex to FFhex). The register number is also known as the BDS code (Comm-B data selector). In this documentation a register is named: register XY_{16} or register addressed by BDS code X,Y. Outside this document, it is also often referenced as just BDS X,Y.

True Track angle means the angle between the track (course over ground or path) of the aircraft and true north.

Uplink is a transfer of information, issued from any ground-based entity (typically: the ATC Centre under which the aircraft is under responsibility) to an aircraft (not necessarily airborne).

Warning means the level or category of alert for conditions that require immediate flight crew awareness and immediate flight crew response.

Worst case avionics means a combination of tolerance values, specified by the aircraft constructor for the altimetry fit into the aircraft which gives the largest combined absolute value for residual SSE plus avionics errors.

CS ACNS.A.GEN.010 Instructions for continued airworthiness
(See AMC1 ACNS.A.GEN.)

Instructions for continued airworthiness for each system, part or appliance as specified in this CS ACNS and any information related to the interface of those systems, parts or appliances with the aircraft are to be provided.
Subpart B — Communications (COM)

SECTION 1 — VOICE CHANNEL SPACING (VCS)

General

CS ACNS.B.VCS.001 Applicability
The section provides standards for aircraft voice communication systems operating in the band 117,975-137 MHz.

System functional requirements

CS ACNS.B.VCS.010 Voice Communication System
(see AMC1 ACNS.B.VCS.010)
(a) The voice communication system is capable of 8.33 kHz and 25 kHz channel spacing
(b) Voice communication system is capable of operating with off-set carrier frequencies on 25 kHz channel spacing.

System performance requirements

CS ACNS.B.VCS.020 Performance Requirements
The voice communication systems conforms to the performance requirements of the following sections of ICAO Annex 10, Volume III, Part 2 (Second Edition — July 2007 incorporating Amendment No 85) Chapter 2 'Aeronautical Mobile Service':
(a) Section 2.1 ‘Air-ground VHF communication system characteristics’.
(b) Section 2.2 ‘System characteristics of the ground installations’ of ICAO.
(c) Section 2.3.1 ‘Transmitting function’.
(d) Section 2.3.2 ‘Receiving function’ excluding sub-section 2.3.2.8 ‘VDL — Interference Immunity Performance’.

CS ACNS.B.VCS.025 Integrity
The voice communication systems is designed commensurate with a ‘major’ failure condition.

CS ACNS.B.VCS.030 Continuity
The continuity of the voice communication system is designed to an allowable qualitative probability of ‘remote’.

Installation requirements

CS ACNS.B.VCS.040 Flight Deck Interface
(see AMC1 ACNS.B.VCS.040)
A means is provided to:
(a) select the voice communications channel;
(b) display the selected voice communications channel to the flight crew;
(c) indicate the non-operational status or failure of the system without undue delay;
SECTION 2 – DATA LINK SERVICES (DLS)

General

CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.001 Applicability
(See GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.001)
This section provides the airworthiness standard for ATN B1 with VDL Mode 2 data link aircraft systems to be installed on aircraft intended to be used for CPDLC Communications.

CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.005 Installation Requirements
(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.005)
The data link system includes a means to enable data communication and flight deck annunciations and controls.

Flight deck control and indication capabilities

CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.010 Flight Deck Interface
(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.010)
(a) A means is provided:
   (1) to inform clearly and unambiguously when uplinked messages are received;
   (2) for the flight crew to initiate the data link services;
   (3) for the flight crew to know in real time the identifier of the ATS provider(s) connecting with the aircraft;
   (4) to display all messages, with minimal flight crew action, in a format that is easy to comprehend and distinguishable from each other;
   (5) for the flight crew to respond to ATS messages;
   (6) to inform the flight crew that pending or open messages are waiting for a response;
   (7) for the flight crew to determine the status of the data link system;
(b) A means is provided to prohibit the deletion, confirmation, or clearance of a message until the entire message is displayed.

CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.015 Dual Data Link Capabilities (Dual stack)
(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.015)
For aircraft integrating both FANS 1/A and ATN B1 CPDLC applications:
(a) Control and display: Messages with the same intent that are transmitted or received through these technologies are displayed in the same way.
(b) Alerting: Where a common alerting is not demonstrable, a mean is provided to distinguish between the alerting scheme in a format that is easy to comprehend.
ATN B1 data link

CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.020 Data Link Services
(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.020 and GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.020)

The data link system provides the following services:

(a) Data Link Initiation Capability (DLIC);
(b) ATC Communications Management (ACM);
(c) ATC Clearances and Information (ACL); and
(d) ATC Microphone Check (AMC).

CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.025 Protection mechanism

A means is provided to protect the integrity of the message.

System performance requirements

CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.030 Integrity
The data link system integrity is designed commensurate with a ‘major’ failure condition.

CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.035 Continuity
The data link system continuity is designed to an allowable qualitative probability of ‘probable’.

Time

CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.040 Universal Time Coordinated (UTC)
(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.040)

For time synchronisation a valid UTC time source is used.

Data link initiation capability (DLIC) service messages

CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.050 DLIC Uplink Messages
(see AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.050)

The data link system is capable of receiving and processing the following messages for the DLIC logon and contact functions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logon</td>
<td>CMLogonResponse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>CMContactRequest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.055  DLIC Downlink Messages

(see AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.055)

The data link system is capable of sending the following messages for the DLIC logon and contact functions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logon</td>
<td>CMLogonRequest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>CMContactResponse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CS ACNS.DLS.B.B1.060  DLIC Initiation when in CPDLC Inhibited State (Uplink)

When the data link system is in the 'CPDLC inhibited' state, DLIC Contact Request is processed but the system is remaining in the 'CPDLC inhibited' state.

CPDLC Messages

CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.070  CPDLC Uplink Messages


The data link system is capable of receiving, processing and displaying the following message elements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UM0</td>
<td>UNABLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM1</td>
<td>STANDBY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM3</td>
<td>ROGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM4</td>
<td>AFFIRM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM5</td>
<td>NEGATIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM19</td>
<td>MAINTAIN [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM20</td>
<td>CLIMB TO [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM23</td>
<td>DESCEND TO [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM26</td>
<td>CLIMB TO REACH [level] BY [time]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM27</td>
<td>CLIMB TO REACH [level] BY [position]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM28</td>
<td>DESCEND TO REACH [level] BY [time]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM29</td>
<td>DESCEND TO REACH [level] BY [position]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM46</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM47</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT OR ABOVE [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM48</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT OR BELOW [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM51</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT [time]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM52</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT OR BEFORE [time]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM53</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT OR AFTER [time]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM54</td>
<td>CROSS [position] BETWEEN [time] AND [time]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM55</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT [speed]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM61</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT AND MAINTAIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM64</td>
<td>OFFSET [specifiedDistance] [direction] OF ROUTE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM72</td>
<td>RESUME OWN NAVIGATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM74</td>
<td>PROCEED DIRECT TO [position]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM79</td>
<td>CLEARED TO [position] VIA [routeClearance]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM80</td>
<td>CLEARED [routeClearance]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM82</td>
<td>CLEARED TO DEViate UP TO [specifiedDistance] [direction] OF ROUTE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM92</td>
<td>HOLD AT [position] AS PUBLISHED MAINTAIN [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM94</td>
<td>TURN [direction] HEADING [degrees]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM96</td>
<td>CONTINUE PRESENT HEADING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM106</td>
<td>MAINTAIN [speed]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM107</td>
<td>MAINTAIN PRESENT SPEED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM108</td>
<td>MAINTAIN [speed] OR GREATER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM109</td>
<td>MAINTAIN [speed] OR LESS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM116</td>
<td>RESUME NORMAL SPEED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM117</td>
<td>CONTACT [unitname] [frequency]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM120</td>
<td>MONITOR [unitname] [frequency]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM123</td>
<td>SQUAWK [code]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM133</td>
<td>REPORT PRESENT LEVEL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM148</td>
<td>WHEN CAN YOU ACCEPT [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM157</td>
<td>CHECK STUCK MICROPHONE [frequency]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM159</td>
<td>ERROR [errorInformation]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM162</td>
<td>SERVICE UNAVAILABLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM165</td>
<td>THEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM171</td>
<td>CLIMB AT [verticalRate] MINIMUM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM172</td>
<td>CLIMB AT [verticalRate] MAXIMUM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM173</td>
<td>DESCEND AT [verticalRate] MINIMUM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM174</td>
<td>DESCEND AT [verticalRate] MAXIMUM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM179</td>
<td>SQUAWK IDENT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM183</td>
<td>[freetext]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM190</td>
<td>FLY HEADING [degrees]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM196</td>
<td>[freetext]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM203</td>
<td>[freetext]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM205</td>
<td>[freetext]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.075  CPDLC Downlink Messages

(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.075, GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.075, GM2 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.075 and GM3 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.075)

The data link system is capable of preparing and send the following downlink message elements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DM0</td>
<td>WILCO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM1</td>
<td>UNABLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM2</td>
<td>STANDBY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM3</td>
<td>ROGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM4</td>
<td>AFFIRM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM5</td>
<td>NEGATIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM6</td>
<td>REQUEST [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM18</td>
<td>REQUEST [speed]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM22</td>
<td>REQUEST DIRECT TO [position]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM32</td>
<td>PRESENT LEVEL [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM62</td>
<td>ERROR [errorInformation]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM63</td>
<td>NOT CURRENT DATA AUTHORITY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM65</td>
<td>DUE TO WEATHER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM66</td>
<td>DUE TO AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM81</td>
<td>WE CAN ACCEPT [level] AT [time]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM82</td>
<td>WE CANNOT ACCEPT [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM89</td>
<td>MONITORING [unitname] [frequency]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM98</td>
<td>[freetext]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM99</td>
<td>CURRENT DATA AUTHORITY</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Data Link Services Requirements

**CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.080  Data Link Initiation Capability (DLIC) Service**

(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.080 and GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.080)

The data link system for DLIC conforms with section 4.1, 4.2.2 and 4.3.2 of EUROCAE document ED-120 Safety and Performance Requirements Standard For Initial Air Traffic Data Link Services In Continental Airspace, including change 1 and change 2 and section 2.2.1 and 4.1 of EUROCAE Document ED-110B Interoperability Requirements Standard for Aeronautical Telecommunication Network Baseline 1.

**CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.085  ATC Communications Management (ACM) Service**

(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.085 and GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.085)

The data link system for ACM conforms with section 5.1.1, 5.1.2.3 (excluding requirements relating to downstream clearance) and 5.1.3.2 of EUROCAE Document ED-120 Safety and Performance Requirements Standard For Initial Air Traffic Data Link Services In Continental Airspace, including change 1 and change 2.

**CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.090  ACL Service Safety Requirements**

(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.090 and GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.090)

The data link system for ACL conforms with section 5.2.1, 5.2.2.3 and 5.2.3.2 of EUROCAE Document ED-120 Safety and Performance Requirements Standard For Initial Air Traffic Data Link Services In Continental Airspace, including change 1 and change 2.

**CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.095  ATC Microphone Check (AMC) Service**

The data link system for AMC conforms with section 5.3.1, 5.3.2.3 and 5.3.3.2 of EUROCAE Document ED-120 Safety and Performance Requirements Standard For Initial Air Traffic Data Link Services In Continental Airspace, including change 1 and change 2.

**Interoperability Requirements**

**CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.100  Network Layer Requirements**

(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.100 and GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.100)

The ATN Router conforms to Class 6 with the capability to support Inter-domain routing protocol (IDRP).

**CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.105  Transport Layer Protocol Requirements**

(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.105 and GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.105)

The ATN Connection Oriented Transport Protocol (COTP), conforms to Transport Protocol Class 4.
**CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.110  Session Layer Requirement**
(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.110)

ATN Session protocol is capable of supporting the following session protocol data units (SPDUs):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full SPDU Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCN</td>
<td>Short Connect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRPSAC</td>
<td>Short Accept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SACC</td>
<td>Short Accept Continue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRF</td>
<td>Short Refuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRFC</td>
<td>Short Refuse Continue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.115  Presentation Layer Requirements**
(See AMC ACNS.B.DLS.B1.115)

ATN Presentation protocol is capable of supporting the presentation protocol data units (PPDUs) listed in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full PPDU Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SHORT-CP</td>
<td>Short Presentation Connect, unaligned PER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHORT-CPA</td>
<td>Short Presentation Connect Accept, unaligned PER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHORT-CPR</td>
<td>Short Presentation Connect Reject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.120  Application Layer Requirements**
(See AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.120 and GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.120)

The Application Layer is application-independent (also known as 'Layer 7a'), and composed of a Convergence Function supporting operations of an Application Control Service Element (ACSE).

**CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.125  Database**
The Network Service Access Point (NSAP) address database is capable of being updated.
Subpart C — Navigation (NAV)

(Reserved)
Subpart D — Surveillance (SUR)

Section 1 — Mode A/C only surveillance

GENERAL

CS ACNS.D.AC.001 Applicability
This section provides standards for Mode A/C only airborne surveillance installations.

SYSTEM FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

CS ACNS.D.AC.010 Transponder characteristics
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.AC.010)
(a) The transponder is approved and has Mode A and Mode C capability.
(b) The transponder replies with Mode A and Mode C replies to Mode A/C interrogations, to Mode A/C-only all-call interrogations, and to Mode A/C/S all-call interrogations.
(c) The peak pulse power available at the antenna end of the transmission line of the transponder is more than 125 W (21 dBW) and not more than 500 W (27 dBW) for aircraft that operate at altitudes exceeding 4570 m (15 000 ft) or with a maximum cruising speed exceeding 90 m/s (175 knots).
(d) The peak pulse power available at the antenna end of the transmission line of the transponder is more than 70 W (18.5 dBW) and not more than 500 W (27 dBW) for aircraft operating at or below 4570 m (15 000 ft) with a maximum cruising airspeed of 90 m/s (175 knots) or less.

CS ACNS.D.AC.015 Data transmission
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.AC.015)
The surveillance system provides the following data in the replies:
(a) The Mode A identity code in the range 0000 to 7777 (Octal).
(b) The pressure altitude corresponding to within plus or minus 38.1 m (125 ft), on a 95% probability basis, with the pressure-altitude information (referenced to the standard pressure setting of 1.01325 \(10^5\) Pa), used on board the aircraft to adhere to the assigned flight profile. The pressure altitude ranges from minus 304 m (1 000 ft) to the maximum certificated altitude of aircraft plus 1520 m (5 000 ft).
(c) Special Position Indication (SPI) for 15 to 30 seconds after an IDENT (SPI) command has been initiated by the pilot.

CS ACNS.D.AC.020 Altitude source
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.AC.020)
(a) The reported pressure altitude is obtained from an approved source.
(b) The altitude resolution is equal to or less than 30.48 m (100 ft.).
(c) The altitude source connected to the active transponder is the source being used to fly the aircraft.
**CS ACNS.D.AC.025  Flight deck interface**  
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.AC.025)  
A means is provided to:  
(a) select Mode A Code including emergency indicators;  
(b) initiate the IDENT (SPI) feature;  
(c) notify the flight crew when the transmission of pressure altitude information has been inhibited if a means to inhibit the transmission of pressure altitude is provided;  
(d) select the transponder to the ‘standby’ or ‘OFF’ condition;  
(e) indicate the non-operational status or failure of the transponder system without undue delay and without the need for flight crew action;  
(f) display the selected Mode A code to the flight crew; and  
(g) select the pressure altitude source to be connected to the active transponder.

**SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**CS ACNS.D.AC.030  Integrity**  
The Mode A/C only airborne surveillance system integrity is designed commensurate with a ‘minor’ failure condition.

**CS ACNS.D.AC.035  Continuity**  
The Mode A/C airborne surveillance system continuity is designed to an allowable qualitative probability of ‘probable’.

**INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

**CS ACNS.D.AC.040  Dual/multiple transponder installation**  
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.AC.040)  
If more than one transponder is installed, simultaneous operation of the transponders is prevented.

**CS ACNS.D.AC.045  Antenna installation**  
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.AC.045)  
The installed antenna(s) has (have) a radiation pattern which is vertically polarised, omnidirectional in the horizontal plane, and has sufficient vertical beam width to ensure proper system operation during normal aircraft manoeuvres.
Section 2 — Mode S elementary surveillance

GENERAL

CS ACNS.D.ELS.001  Applicability
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.001)
This section provides the standards for airborne Mode S Elementary Surveillance installations.

SYSTEM FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

CS ACNS.D.ELS.010  Transponder characteristics
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.010)
(a) The transponder(s) is (are) an approved level 2 or greater Mode S transponder(s) with Elementary Surveillance and Surveillance Identifier (SI) capability.
(b) The transponder(s) of aircraft that have ACAS II installed is (are) ACAS compatible
(c) The peak pulse power available at the antenna end of the transmission line of the transponder is more than 125 W (21 dBW) and not more than 500 W (27 dBW) for aircraft that operate at altitudes exceeding 4 570 m (15 000 ft) or with a maximum cruising speed exceeding 90 m/s (175 knots).
(d) The peak pulse power available at the antenna end of the transmission line of the transponder is more than 70 W (18.5 dBW) and not more than 500 W (27 dBW) for aircraft operating at or below 4 570 m (15 000 ft) with a maximum cruising airspeed of 90 m/s (175 knots) or less.

CS ACNS.D.ELS.015  Data transmission
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.015)
(a) The surveillance system provides the following data in the Mode S replies:
   (1) The Mode A Code in the range 0000 to 7777 (Octal);
   (2) The pressure altitude corresponding to within plus or minus 38 m (125 ft), on a 95 per cent probability basis, with the pressure-altitude information (referenced to the standard pressure setting of 1013.25 hectopascals), used on board the aircraft to adhere to the assigned flight profile. The pressure altitude ranges from minus 300 m (1 000 ft) to the maximum certificated altitude of aircraft plus 1 500 m (5 000 ft);
   (3) On-the-ground status information;
   (4) The Aircraft Identification as specified in Item 7 of the ICAO flight plan or the aircraft registration;
   (5) Special Position Indication (SPI);
   (6) Emergency status (Emergency, Radio communication failure, Unlawful interference);
   (7) The data link capability report;
   (8) The common usage GICB capability report;
   (9) The ICAO 24-bit aircraft address; and
   (10) Aircraft that have ACAS II installed provide the ACAS active resolution advisory report.
All other data transmitted is verified.

(1) If the system transmits one or more additional downlink airborne parameters in addition to those listed in paragraph (a), then the relevant sub specifications of CS ACNS.D.EHS.015 are also complied with.

(2) If the system transmits additional parameters on the extended squitter and if their full compliance with CS ACNS.D.ADSB has not been verified, as a minimum the aircraft identification, pressure altitude, ICAO 24-bit aircraft address is identical to those transmitted in the Mode S replies. Additionally the position and velocity quality indicators reports the lowest quality.

CS ACNS.D.ELS.020  On-the-ground status determination
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.020)

(a) The on-the-ground status is not set by a manual action.

(b) If automatically determination of the On-the-ground status is not available, the On-the-ground status is set to airborne.

CS ACNS.D.ELS.025  Altitude source
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.025)

(a) The reported pressure altitude is obtained from an approved source.

(b) The altitude resolution is equal to or less than 30.48 m (100 ft.).

(c) The altitude source connected to the active transponder is the source being used to fly the aircraft.

CS ACNS.D.ELS.030  Flight deck interface
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.030)

(a) A means is provided:

(1) to select Mode A Code, including emergency indicators;

(2) to initiate the IDENT (SPI) feature;

(3) for an aircraft identification to be inserted by the flight crew if the aircraft uses variable aircraft identification;

(4) to notify the flight crew when the transmission of pressure altitude information has been inhibited, if a means to inhibit the transmission of pressure altitude is provided;

(5) to select the transponder to the ‘standby’ or ‘OFF’ condition;

(6) to indicate the non-operational status or failure of the transponder system without undue delay and without the need for flight crew action;

(7) to display the selected Mode A code to the flight crew;

(8) to display the aircraft identification to the flight crew; and

(b) Input which is not intended to be operated in flight, is not readily accessible to the flight crew.
SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

CS ACNS.D.ELS.040  Integrity
The Mode S ELS airborne surveillance system integrity is designed commensurate with a 'minor' failure condition.

CS ACNS.D.ELS.045  Continuity
The Mode S ELS airborne surveillance system continuity is designed to an allowable qualitative probability of 'remote'..

INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

CS ACNS.D.ELS.050  Dual/multiple transponder installation
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.050)
If more than one transponder is installed, simultaneous operation of transponders is prevented.

CS ACNS.D.ELS.055  ICAO 24-bit Aircraft address
The ICAO 24-bit aircraft address assigned by the competent authority is correctly implemented on each transponder.

CS ACNS.D.ELS.060  Antenna installation
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.)

(a) The installed antenna(s) has (have) a resulting radiation pattern which is (are) vertically polarised, omnidirectional in the horizontal plane, and has (have) sufficient vertical beam width to ensure proper system operation during normal aircraft manoeuvres.

(b) Antenna(s) is/are located such that the effect on the far field radiation pattern(s) by the aircraft structure are minimised.

CS ACNS.D.ELS.065  Antenna diversity
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.)
Aircraft with a maximum certified take-off mass in excess of 5700 kg or a maximum cruising true airspeed capability, under International Standard Atmosphere (ISA) conditions, in excess of 130 m/s (250 knots) operates with an antenna diversity installation.
Section 3 — Mode S Enhanced Surveillance

GENERAL

CS ACNS.D.EHS.001 Applicability
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.EHS.001)
(a) This section provides standards for airborne Mode S EHS installations which provide on request (through Mode S replies elicited by Mode S interrogations) airborne parameters in addition to parameters provided by ELS installations compliant with Section 2.

Note: The criteria that are applicable to airborne installations providing spontaneously (through ADS-B Extended Squitters) airborne parameters are specified in Section 4.

(b) This certification specification is applied together with Mode S Elementary Surveillance certification specification defined in Section 2.

SYSTEM FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

CS ACNS.D.EHS.010 Transponder characteristics
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.EHS.)
The transponder is an approved Mode S transponder with EHS capability.

CS ACNS.D.EHS.015 Data transmission
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.EHS.)
(a) The surveillance system provides in the Mode S reply the following downlink aircraft parameters in addition to those specified in CS ACNS.D.ELS.: 

(1) MCP/FCU Selected Altitude;
(2) Roll Angle;
(3) True Track Angle;
(4) Ground Speed;
(5) Magnetic Heading;
(6) Indicated Airspeed or Mach No ;
(7) Vertical rate: Barometric Altitude rate or Inertial vertical Velocity. When barometric altitude rate field is provided, it is derived solely from barometric measurement;
(8) Barometric Pressure Setting in use minus 80 000 Pascal; and
(9) Track Angle Rate or True Airspeed.

(b) The sensor sources connected to the active transponder are the sensors relevant to the aircraft flight profile.

(c) All transmitted parameters are correct and are correctly indicated as available.
SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

CS ACNS.D.EHS.020 Integrity
The Mode S EHS airborne surveillance system integrity is designed commensurate with a 'minor' failure condition for the downlink aircraft parameters listed in CS ACNS.D.EHS.015.

CS ACNS.D.EHS.025 Continuity
The Mode S EHS airborne surveillance system continuity is designed to an allowable qualitative probability of 'probable' for the downlink aircraft parameters listed in CS ACNS.D.EHS.015.
Section 4 — 1090 MHz Extended Squitter ADS-B

GENERAL

CS ACNS.D.ADSB.001 Applicability

(See GM1 ACNS.D.ADSB.001)

This section provides standards for 1090 MHz Extended Squitter (ES) ADS-B Out installations.

SYSTEM FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

CS ACNS.D.ADSB.010 ADS-B Out system approval

(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.010)

The equipment contributing to the ADS-B Out function is approved.

ADS-B OUT DATA

CS ACNS.D.ADSB.020 ADS-B Out Data Parameters

(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.020(a-b))

(a) The ADS-B Out system provides the following minimum set of data parameters:

1. Aircraft Identification;
2. Mode A Code;
3. ICAO 24-bit aircraft address;
4a. Airborne Horizontal Position — Latitude and Longitude;
4b. Airborne Navigation Integrity Category: NIC;
4c. Airborne/Surface Navigation Accuracy Category for Position: NACp;
4d. Airborne/Surface Source Integrity Level: SIL;
4e. Airborne/Surface System Design Assurance: SDA;
5. Pressure Altitude (incl. NICbaro);
6. Special Position Identification (SPI);
7a. Emergency Status;
7b. Emergency Indication;
8. 1090 ES Version Number;
9a. Airborne velocity over Ground — (East/West and North/South);
9b. Airborne/Surface Navigation Accuracy Category for Velocity: NACv;
10. Emitter Category;
11. Vertical Rate;
12a. Surface Horizontal Position — Latitude and Longitude;
12b. Surface Navigation Integrity Category: NIC;
13. Surface Ground Track;
14. Movement (surface ground speed);
(15) Length/width of Aircraft;
(16) GPS Antenna Longitudinal Offset;
(17a) Geometric Altitude; and
(17b) Geometric Altitude Quality: GVA.
(b) Where available in a suitable format, the ADS-B Out system provides the following data parameters:
   (1) Selected Altitude;
   (2) Barometric Pressure Setting; and
   (3) ACAS Resolution Advisory.

**CS ACNS.D.ADSB.025 Provision of Data**
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.025(a)(c))
(a) All data provided by the ADS-B Out system comes from approved sources.
(b) The data transmitted by the ADS-B Out system originates from the same data source as used in the transponder replies to Mode S interrogations.
(c) When a data quality indication is required, it is provided to the ADS-B transmit unit together with the associated data parameter and it expresses the actual quality of the respective data as valid at the time of applicability of the measurement.

**ADS-B TRANSMIT UNIT**

**CS ACNS.D.ADSB.030 ADS-B Transmit Unit Approval**
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.)
The ADS-B transmit unit is approved and it is integrated in the Mode S transponder.

**CS ACNS.D.ADSB.035 ICAO 24-bit Aircraft address**
The ICAO 24 bit aircraft address is implemented as specified in CS ACNS.D.ELS.055.

**CS ACNS.D.ADSB.040 Antenna diversity**
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.040)
The ADS-B transmit unit employs antenna diversity under the same conditions as specified in CS ACNS.D.ELS.065.

**CS ACNS.D.ADSB.045 Antenna installation**
The antenna is installed as specified in CS ACNS.D.ELS.060.

**CS ACNS.D.ADSB.050 Transmit power**
The ADS-B transmit unit has a peak transmit power as specified in CS ACNS.D.ELS.010(c);(d).

**CS ACNS.D.ADSB.055 Simultaneous operation of ADS-B transmit units**
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.)
If more than one ADS-B transmit unit is installed, simultaneous operation of the transmit systems is prevented.

**CS ACNS.D.ADSB.060 On-the-ground status determination**
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.)

(a) The on-the-ground status is determined and validated by the ADS-B Out system.

(b) The on-the-ground status is not set by a manual action.

HORIZONTAL POSITION AND VELOCITY DATA SOURCES

CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070  Horizontal Position and Velocity Data Sources
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.)

(a) The horizontal position is derived from GNSS data.

(b) The GNSS receiver based horizontal position and velocity data source is approved and performs, as a minimum, horizontal position receiver autonomous integrity monitoring (RAIM) and fault detection and exclusion (FDE).

(c) Horizontal velocity data stems from the same source as horizontal position data.

OTHER DATA SOURCES

CS ACNS.D.ADSB.080  Data Sources as defined by Mode S Elementary and Enhanced Surveillance
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.080)
The data source requirements as defined for in section 2 and 3 of this subpart, are applicable.

CS ACNS.D.ADSB.085  Geometric Altitude
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.)

(a) Geometric Altitude is provided by the horizontal position and velocity source (see CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070).

(b) Geometric Altitude is transmitted as height above WGS-84 ellipsoid.

FLIGHT DECK CONTROL AND INDICATION CAPABILITIES

CS ACNS.D.ADSB.090  Flight deck interface
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.090(a) and AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.090(b))

(a) The control and display of surveillance data items is as per CS ACNS.D.ELS.030.

(b) A means is provided to indicate the non-operational status or failure of the ADS-B Out system without undue delay.
SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

CS ACNS.D.ADSB.100 Integrity
(a) The ADS-B Out system integrity is designed commensurate with a 'major' failure condition for the transmission of the following parameters:

1. ICAO 24-bit aircraft address;
2. Airborne Horizontal Position — Latitude and Longitude;
3. Airborne Navigation Integrity Category: NIC;
5. Airborne/Surface Source Integrity Level: SIL;
6. Airborne/Surface System Design Assurance: SDA;
7. 1090 ES Version Number;
8. Airborne velocity over Ground — East/West and North/South;
10. Emitter Category;
11. Surface Horizontal Position — Latitude and Longitude;
12. Surface Navigation Integrity Category: NIC;
13. Surface Ground Track;
14. Movement (surface ground speed);
15. Length/width of Aircraft;
16. GPS Antenna Offset;
17. Geometric Altitude;
18. Geometric Altitude Quality: GVA;

(b) The ADS-B Out system integrity is designed commensurate with a 'minor' failure condition for the transmission of other data parameters.

CS ACNS.D.ADSB.105 Continuity
(a) The ADS-B Out system continuity is designed to an allowable qualitative probability of 'remote'.

HORIZONTAL POSITION AND VELOCITY DATA REFRESH RATE AND LATENCY

CS ACNS.D.ADSB.110 Horizontal Position and Velocity Data Refresh Rate
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.)
A horizontal position and velocity source calculates position and velocity data with a rate of at least 1 Hertz.

CS ACNS.D.ADSB.115 Horizontal Position and Velocity Total Latency
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.115 and 120)
Measured from the time of applicability within the source, the total latency of the horizontal position and horizontal velocity data introduced by the ADS-B Out system does not exceed 1.5 second.
CS ACNS.D.ADSB.120  Horizontal Position Uncompensated Latency
(See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.115 and 120)

The uncompensated latency of the horizontal position data introduced by the ADS-B Out System does not exceed 0.6 second.
Subpart E — Others

SECTION 1 – TERRAIN AWARENESS AND WARNING SYSTEM (TAWS)

General

CS ACNS.E.TAWS.001 Applicability

(See GM1 ACNS.E.TAWS.001)

This section provides the airworthiness standards applicable to Terrain Awareness and Warning System Class A and Class B for aeroplanes.

CS ACNS.E.TAWS.005 TAWS Equipment Approval

(See AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.005)

The TAWS is Class A or Class B approved equipment.

System functional requirements

CS ACNS.E.TAWS.010 Required Functions and Interfaces

(See AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.010, AMC2 ACNS.E.TAWS.010)

TAWS Class A or Class B provides suitable alerting and warning capabilities and other system interfaces to support the following functions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAWS System Function</th>
<th>Class A TAWS</th>
<th>Class B TAWS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alerting</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imminent contact with ground indications (GPWS functions) including:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(19) excessive Rates of Descent;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(20) negative Climb Rate or Altitude Loss After Take-Off or Go-around.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Voice callout when descending through a predefined altitude above the terrain or nearest runway elevation.</td>
<td>X With a 500 ft call out</td>
<td>x With a 500 ft call out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A forward Looking Terrain Avoidance (FLTA) function, including:</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• a Reduced Required Terrain Clearance (RTC) function;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• an Imminent Terrain Impact function;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• a FLTA Turning Flight function.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Premature Descent Alert (PDA) function, including detection and alerting for Premature Descents Along the Final Approach Segment</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TAWS System Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAWS System Function</th>
<th>Class A TAWS</th>
<th>Class B TAWS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Excessive Closure Rate to Terrain</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight Into Terrain When not in Landing Configuration</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive Downward Deviation from a glide slope or glide path</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAWS and sensor failure monitoring and annunciation function</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capability to initiate the TAWS self-test function on the ground and where feasible in the air</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TAWS System Interfaces

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAWS System Interfaces</th>
<th>Class A TAWS</th>
<th>Class B TAWS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A terrain display capability</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capability to drive a terrain display</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The use of position source input</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The use of landing guidance deviation input</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The use of radio altimeter sensor input</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The use of Terrain and Airport information</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface with the flight recording system to record TAWS alerts and inhibition of the FLTA or PDA functions</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The use of landing gear and flaps position</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The use of roll attitude input</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The interface with flight deck audio systems</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CS ACNS.E.TAWS.015  FLTA function requirements**

(See AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.015)

Provide an FLTA function that:

(a) Provides an Forward Looking Terrain Avoidance (FLTA) function that looks ahead of the airplane along and below the airplane’s lateral and vertical flight path and provides suitable alerts if a potential CFIT threat exists.

(b) Provides a Required Terrain Clearance (RTC) alerts when the aeroplane is currently above the terrain in the aeroplane’s projected flight path but the projected amount of terrain clearance is considered unsafe for the particular phase of flight.
TABLE 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAWS REQUIRED TERRAIN CLEARANCE (RTC) BY PHASE OF FLIGHT</th>
<th>TAWS (RTC) Level Flight</th>
<th>TAWS (RTC) Descending /climbing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>En route</td>
<td>215 m (700 ft)</td>
<td>150 m (500 ft)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal (Intermediate Segment)</td>
<td>105 m (350 ft)</td>
<td>90 m (300 ft)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approach</td>
<td>45 m (150 ft)</td>
<td>30 m (100 ft)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Departure (above 400 ft)</td>
<td>30 m (100 ft)</td>
<td>30 m (100 ft)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) gives Imminent Terrain Impact alerts when the aeroplane is currently below the elevation of a terrain cell along the aeroplane’s lateral projected flight path and, based upon the vertical projected flight path, the equipment predicts that the terrain clearance will be less than the value given in the RTC column of Table 1.

(d) gives alerts for the Imminent Terrain Impact and Required Terrain Clearance functions when the aeroplane is in turning flight.

CS ACNS.E.TAWS.020  PDA function requirements

(See GM1 ACNS.E.TAWS.020)

Provide a Premature Descent Alert function:

(a) to determine if the aeroplane is significantly below the normal approach flight path to a runway and in such a case issue an alert, based on the current position and flight path information of the aeroplane, as determined from a suitable navigation source and airport database;

(b) that is available on all types of instrument approaches including straight-in approaches, circling approaches and approaches that are not aligned within 30 degrees of the runway heading.

CS ACNS.E.TAWS.025  Class A TAWS inhibition

(See AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.025)

A means is provided to:

(a) the flight crew to inhibit the FLTA and PDA functions together with appropriate annunciation of the inhibited condition. Inhibiting FLTA and PDA does not impact the Basic GPWS functions;

(b) indicate to the flight crew of the ‘Inhibit status’.

CS ACNS.E.TAWS.030  Terrain information display

(See AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.030)

(a) When terrain information is provided it is clearly visible to the flight crew.

(b) Terrain information is displayed as follows:

(1) The terrain is depicted relative to the aeroplane’s position such that the pilot may estimate the relative bearing and distance to the terrain of interest.

(2) The terrain depicted is oriented in accordance with the orientation of the navigation information used on the flight deck.
Variations in terrain elevation depicted relative to the aeroplane’s elevation (above and below) are visually distinguishable.

Terrain that generates alerts is displayed in a manner to distinguish it from non-hazardous terrain, consistent with the caution and warning alert level.

If the terrain is presented on a multi-function display, the terrain mode and terrain information is distinguishable from weather and other features.

Terrain information is readily available and displayed with sufficient accuracy and in a manner to allow the flight crew to determine if it is a terrain threat to the aeroplane.

(c) The display of terrain data complements and is compatible with the terrain alerting function of the TAWS.

(d) The terrain information is clear and unambiguous, available without potential confusion during day and night operations under all ambient conditions expected in service.

(e) Where additional terrain views are provided, they must present information consistent and compatible with (a) to (e) above.

**CS ACNS.E.TAWS.035  Aural and visual alerts**

(See AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.035)

(a) The TAWS provides suitable aural and visual alerts for each of its functions.

(b) Aural and visual alerts are initiated simultaneously, except when suppression of aural alerts is necessary to protect pilots from nuisance aural alerting.

(c) Each aural alert identifies the reason for the alert.

(d) The system is capable of accepting and processing aeroplane performance related data or aeroplane dynamic data and providing the capability to update aural and visual alerts at least once per second.

(e) The aural and visual outputs is compatible with the standard cockpit displays and auditory systems.

(f) The visual display of alerting information is continuously displayed until the situation is no longer valid.

**System performance requirements**

**CS ACNS.E.TAWS.040  Integrity**

(a) Integrity of the TAWS (including un-enunciated loss of the terrain alerting function) is designed commensurate with a major failure condition.

(b) False terrain alerting is designed commensurate with a minor failure condition.

(c) Failure of the installed TAWS does not degrade the integrity of any critical system interfacing with the TAWS.

**CS ACNS.E.TAWS.045  Continuity**

Continuity of the TAWS is designed to an allowable qualitative probability of ‘probable’.

**CS ACNS.E.TAWS.050  GPWS**

The predictive terrain hazard warning functions, does not adversely affect the functionality, reliability or integrity of the basic GPWS functions.
CS ACNS.E.TAWS.055 Terrain and airport information
(See AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.055)
(a) Terrain and airport information are developed in accordance with an acceptable standard.
(b) TAWS is capable of accepting updated terrain and airport information.

CS ACNS.E.TAWS.060 Positioning information
(See AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.060)
(a) The positioning information (i.e. horizontal and vertical position, velocity, or rate of information) is provided from an approved positioning source.
(b) For Class B TAWS, GNSS is the only approved horizontal positioning source.
(c) When the TAWS positioning source is the same as the one used by the primary navigation system and provided that, applicable performance requirements are satisfied for navigation, a failure of the TAWS (including loss of electrical power to the TAWS) does not degrade the primary navigation capability.
(d) When a positioning source generates a fault indication or any flag indicating the position is invalid or does not meet performance requirements, the TAWS is to stop utilising that positioning source.
(e) The positioning source for the predictive terrain hazard warning system accuracy is suitable for each phase of flight and/or region of operations.
(f) The TAWS provides indications, as appropriate, regarding degradation or loss of function associated with the loss of the positioning source.

Installation requirements

CS ACNS.E.TAWS.070 Failure mode
(a) A failure of the TAWS does not disable other protection functions (e.g. windshear or weather radar).
(b) The failure of the GPWS functions, except for power supply failure, input sensor failure, or other failures external to the TAWS functions, does not negatively alter the FLTA function, PDA function, or Terrain Display and vice versa.
(c) Where the terrain information is displayed on a multi-function display, failure of the TAWS does not prevent the normal functioning of other systems using that display.

CS ACNS.E.TAWS.075 Prioritisation scheme
(See AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.075)
The prioritisation scheme for Class A TAWS alerts is compatible and consistent with other alerts including voice call outs from all alerting systems.
CS ACNS.E.TAWS.080  Pop-up mode
(See AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.080)

(a) If implemented, the design of an automatic pop-up function ensures that:
   
   (1) the terrain information is automatically displayed on all crew member terrain displays, when either a predictive terrain caution or a predictive terrain warning alert occurs;
   
   (2) the TAWS pop-up function is consistent with pop-up weather and traffic alerts;
   
   (3) it is evident that an automatic pop-up has occurred;
   
   (4) the terrain display mode is annunciated on the display;
   
   (5) manual switching back to the original display mode is simple.
SECTION 2 – REDUCED VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMUM (RVSM)

General

CS ACNS.E.RVSM.001 Applicability
(SEE AMC1 ACNS.E.RVSM.001)
This section provides airworthiness standard for aircraft to operate a 300 m (1000 ft) vertical separation within RVSM airspace.

CS ACNS.E.RVSM.005 RVSM system
(See AMC1 ACNS.E.RVSM.005)
The RVSM system includes:
(a) two independent altitude measurement systems. Each system is composed of the following elements:
   (1) Cross-coupled static source/system, with ice protection if located in areas subject to ice accretion;
   (2) Equipment for measuring static pressure sensed by the static source, converting it to pressure altitude;
   (3) Equipment for providing a digitally encoded signal corresponding to the displayed pressure altitude, for automatic altitude reporting purposes;
   (4) Static source error correction (SSEC), as required to meet the performance criteria as specified in CS ACNS.E.RVSM.035; and
   (5) Signals referenced to a pilot selected altitude for automatic control and alerting derived from one altitude measurement system.
(b) an altitude alerting system;
(c) an automatic altitude control system; and
(d) a secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponder with altitude reporting system that can be connected to the altitude measurement system in use for altitude keeping.

System functional requirements

CS ACNS.E.RVSM.010 Required functions
(See AMC1 ACNS.E.RVSM.010)
The system:
(a) provides indication to the flight crew of the pressure altitude being flown;
(b) based on the signal produced by the altimetry system, automatically maintains a selected flight level with its altitude control system;
(c) provides an alert to the flight crew when the altitude displayed to the flight crew deviates from the selected altitude by a value of ±60 m (±200 ft) or greater;
(d) automatically reports pressure altitude;
(e) provides an output to the aircraft transponder.
System performance requirements

**CS ACNS.E.RVSM.020  Integrity**
The RVSM system integrity is designed commensurate with a major failure condition.

**CS ACNS.E.RVSM.025  Continuity**
The RVSM system continuity is designed to an allowable qualitative probability of ‘remote’.

**CS ACNS.E.RVSM.030  RVSM system performance**
(See AMC1 ACNS.E.RVSM.030)
(a) The automatic altitude control system controls the altitude within ±20 m (65 ft) about the selected altitude, when the aircraft is operated in straight and level flight under non-turbulent non-gust conditions.
(b) The tolerance of the alert issued when the altitude displayed to the flight crew deviates from the selected altitude by a value of ±60 m (±200 ft) or greater is no greater than ±15 m (±50 ft).
(c) Where an altitude select/acquire function is provided, the altitude select/acquire control panel is configured such that an error of no more than ±8 m (±25 ft) exists between the value selected by, and displayed to, the flight crew, and the corresponding output to the control system.

**CS ACNS.E.RVSM.035  Altimetry system accuracy**
(See AMC1 ACNS.E.RVSM.035, GM1 ACNS.E.RVSM.035)
(a) For Group aircraft, the altimetry system accuracy meets the following criteria in the full envelope:
   (1) At the point of the flight envelope where the mean ASE (ASEmean) reaches its largest absolute value that value does not exceed 25 m (80 ft);
   (2) At the point of the flight envelope where the absolute mean ASE plus three standard deviations of ASE (ASE3SD) reaches its largest absolute value, the absolute value does not exceed 60 m (200 ft).
(b) For RVSM installations on a non-group aircraft, the altimetry system accuracy meets the following criteria:
   (1) For all conditions in the basic envelope:
      | residual static source error + worst case avionics | does not exceed 50 m (160 ft).
   (2) For all conditions in the full envelope (outside the basic envelope):
      | residual static source error + worst case avionics | does not exceed 60 m (200 ft).
CS ACNS

Book 2

Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) and Guidance Material (GM)
(a) GENERAL
Book 2 contains Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) and Guidance Material (GM).

(b) PRESENTATION
(1) The Acceptable Means of Compliance and Guidance Material are presented in full page.
(2) A numbering system has been used in which the Acceptable Means of Compliance and Guidance Material use the same number as the paragraph in Book 1 to which they are related. The number is introduced by the letters AMC (Acceptable Means of Compliance) or GM (Guidance Material) to distinguish the material from Book 1. Reference to the Acceptable Means of Compliance and/or Guidance Material, when applicable, is included in the heading of each Book 1 paragraph.
(3) Explanatory Notes, not forming part of the AMC text, appear in italic typeface.
(4) The units of measurement used in this document are in accordance with the International System of Units (SI) specified in Annex 5 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation. Non-SI units are shown in parentheses following the base units. Where two sets of units are quoted, it should not be assumed that the pairs of values are equal and interchangeable. It may be inferred, however, that an equivalent level of safety is achieved when either set of units is used exclusively.
Subpart A — General

AMC1 ACNS.A.GEN.010 Instructions for Continued Airworthiness

(a) Transponder testing

The Instructions for Continued Airworthiness should include the following measures and precautions in order to minimise the possibility of causing nuisance warnings to ACAS equipped aircraft.

1. When not required, ensure all transponders are selected to ‘OFF’ or ‘Standby’.

2. Before starting any test, contact the local Air Traffic Control Unit and advise them of your intention to conduct transponder testing. Advise the Air Traffic Unit of your start time and test duration. Also inform them of the altitude(s) at which you will be testing, your intended Aircraft Identification (Flight Id) and your intended Mode A code.

   *Note: Certain altitudes may not be possible due to over flying aircraft.*

3. Set the Mode A code to 7776 (or other Mode A code agreed with Air Traffic Control Unit).

   *Note: The Mode A code 7776 is reserved for SSR ground transponder monitoring. This code may be used for transponder testing after having received agreement from the Air Traffic Control Unit.*

4. Set the Aircraft Identification (Flight Id) with the first 8 characters of the company name. This is the name of the company conducting the tests.

5. Set the on-the-ground status for all Mode S replies, except when an airborne reply is required (e.g. for altitude testing).

6. Where possible, perform the testing inside a hangar to take advantage of any shielding properties it may provide.

7. As a precaution, use antenna transmission covers whether or not testing is performed inside or outside.

8. When testing the altitude (Mode C or S) parameter, radiate directly into the ramp test set via the prescribed attenuator.

9. In between testing, i.e., to transition from one altitude to another, select the transponder to ‘standby’ mode.

10. If testing transponder parameters other than ‘altitude’, set altitude to minus 300 m (minus 1 000 feet) or over 18 250 m (60 000 feet). This will minimise the possibility of ACAS warning to airfield and overflying aircraft.

11. When testing is complete, select the transponder(s) to ‘OFF’ or ‘Standby’.

(b) Reduced Vertical Separation Minima

When developing the instructions for continued airworthiness, attention should be given to the following items:

1. All RVSM equipment should be maintained in accordance with the component manufacturers' maintenance instructions and the performance criteria of the RVSM approval data package.

2. Any repairs, not covered by approved maintenance documents, that may affect the integrity and accuracy of the altimeter system, e.g. those affecting the alignment of pitot/static probes, repairs to dents or deformation around static plates should be subject to a design review which is acceptable to the competent authority.
(3) Airframe geometry or skin waviness checks should be performed following repairs or alterations which have an effect on airframe surface and airflow.

(4) The maintenance and inspection programme for the autopilot should ensure continued accuracy and integrity of the automatic altitude control system.
AMC1 ACNS.B.VCS.010 Voice Communication Systems
The VCS equipment composing of the system should be approved in accordance with ETSO-2C37e, ETSO-2C38e or ETSO-2C169a.

For the 25 kHz channel spacing off-set carrier frequency operations the equipment composing the system should conform with the requirements of EUROCAE document ED-23C

In airspace where 8.33 kHz channel spacing communication equipment is mandatory and the carriage of two radios is required, both radios should be 8.33 kHz capable (as opposed to one 8.33 kHz system and one 25 kHz system).

AMC1 ACNS.B.VCS.040 Flight Deck Interface
Flight Crew control and display of communication frequencies information should be consistent with the overall crew flight deck design philosophy.
SECTION 2 – DATA LINK SERVICES

General

GM1.ACNS.B.DLS.B1.001 Applicability
Controller pilot communications through data link is used in different airspaces worldwide. Different technologies are used, and this CS is intended to provide the airworthiness standard for such installations. Additionally, controller pilot communications over ATN B1 data link technology has been mandated in Europe, through the Regulation (EC) No 29/2009. Installations intended to operate within EU Airspace defined in mentioned regulation, should fully comply with all requirements of ‘DATA LINK SERVICES’ section, in its entirety.

Installations not intended to operate within EU Airspace, are not required to comply with mentioned section.

Note: Requirements CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.010 and 015 are also applicable for CPDLC installations where, additionally to ATN B1 over VDL M2, other means of communications and other services are also provided.

GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.005 Data Link System Installation
An example of installation may be a system comprising the following components or inputs:

- A VHF Data Radio (VDR) with Mode 2 capability and its associated antenna.
- A Unit for Communication Management with Mode 2 and ATN capabilities
- A display unit with means for crew to be notified of ATS Requests and Clearances, and issue downlink crew requests to controllers or responses to outstanding messages (from controllers).
- An adequate source for UTC time e.g. a Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS).
- An adequate source for conducted flight plan information (Departure Airport, Destination Airport, Estimated Time of Arrival) e.g. Flight Management System (FMS)
- An adequate source of aeroplane position e.g. Flight Management System (FMS), or a Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) or both
- An adequate source for Air/Ground Status information e.g. an interface with the landing gear or Flight Management System (FMS) or both
- An adequate aural attention getter for announcements.
- Adequate indication means of system and service availability.
- Adequate control means for the crew.

Flight Deck Control and Indication Capabilities

AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.010 Flight Deck Interface
Flight crew control and display of data link related information (connectivity status, outstanding messages, etc.) should be consistent with the overall crew flight deck design philosophy.

Flight crew control and display of data link messages should satisfy integrity and interface design criteria appropriate for the intended purpose. Reference to the applicable CS xx.1309 requirements should be observed.

If a direct interface exists between the data link application and other on board systems, (e.g. flight planning and navigation), a means may be provided for the flight crew to initiate the use...
of the data contained in the message by the other on board system. The means provided should be separate from that used to respond to a message.

Flight deck annunciations should be compatible with the overall alerting scheme of the aircraft. Audible and visual indications should be given by the data link system for each uplinked ATS message, including those messages not displayed immediately because of lack of crew response to an earlier ATS message. Visual alerts alone may be used for non-ATS messages.

Annunciation of the receipt of a message during critical flight phases should be inhibited until after the critical flight phase. The criteria that define critical flight phases should be consistent with the particular flight deck philosophy and the particular data link services supported.

Means should be provided for the flight crew to list, select, and retrieve the most recent ATS messages received and sent by the flight crew during the flight segment. The status of each message, the time it was received or sent, should be accessible.

When CPDLC messages are displayed:

(a) such location should be in the Primary Field of View.

(b) messages should be provided in a dedicated display (or in a dedicated window of a display). Shared use of CPDLC and other applications in a common display (or in the same window of a display) should be avoided.

Note 1: (a) and (b) are intended for future extension of CPDLC use beyond en-route flight phase. Installations not in accordance with these recommendations are liable to be limited for CPDLC operations in the en-route or prior departure flight phase.

Note 2: Where data link messages are displayed on a shared display or on a shared display area, selection of another display format or function should not result in the loss of uplinked messages which are waiting for a response. In case the pilot is working on another task and a message is uplinked, the uplinked message should not interrupt the current work, nor result in the loss of any uplinked message and/or data entered while accomplishing the other task.

(c) messages from the ATS should remain displayed until responded, cleared or the flight crew selects another message.

(d) means should be provided for the flight crew to clear uplinked messages from the display. However, this capability should be protected against inadvertent deletion.

Means should be provided for the flight crew to create, store, retrieve, edit, delete, and send data link messages.

The data link system should indicate when message storage and/or printing is not available.

A flight deck printer could be used as a means of storing data communications messages received or sent during flight.

If a message intended for visual display is greater than the available display area and only part of the message is displayed, a visual indication shall be provided to the pilot to indicate the presence of remaining message.

Data link messages from the ATS should be displayed and remain displayed until responded, cleared or the flight crew selects another message.

The status of each message (i.e. source, time sent, open/closed) should be displayed together with the message.

**AMC1.ACNS.B.DLS.B1.015 Dual Data Link Capabilities (Dual stack)**

*Note: A Dual stack system is either a bilingual system capable of automatically selecting the data link network or a dual system that use manual selection with an interlock system.*
The data link system should comply with ED-154A, interoperability requirements IR-207, IR-209, IR-210, IR-211, IR-212, IR-214, and IR-215 to ensure seamless transition between two adjacent ATSUs, one using FANS 1/A+ and the other using ATN B1.

The data link system should demonstrate common accessibility to the FANS 1/A and ATN B1 CPDLC applications. Accessibility demonstration should include common controls (i.e. line select keys) or, where different, the potential to introduce confusion or unacceptable flight crew workload should be evaluated.

The data link system should demonstrate common control and input procedures for retrieving and responding to FANS 1/A and ATN B1 uplink messages.

The data link system should demonstrate common control and input procedures for composing and sending FANS 1/A and ATN B1 downlink messages.

The data link system should demonstrate common flight deck indications for incoming FANS 1/A and ATN B1 messages. Where common alerting is not demonstrable, the alerting scheme evaluate to ensure that neither confusion nor unnecessary flight crew workload is introduced.

Annunciations and indications should be clear, unambiguous, timely, and consistent with the flight deck philosophy.

FANS 1/A differentiates messages alerting between normal and Urgent. Upon receipt of a high alert CPDLC message, the data link system should indicate it to the flight crew.

Note: FANS 1/A standard (ED-100A) identifies the term ‘IMMEDIATELY’, within the phraseology standardised for CPDLC communications. This term is to be understood within the required communications performance scope (RCP), which for oceanic and remote operations is either 240 seconds or 400 seconds. The use of these terms ‘IMMEDIATELY’ and ‘EXPEDITE’ are not to be confused with the terminology used in material related to CS 25.1322. However, annunciations and indications should allow flight crews to easily identify these messages (associated with Urgent and Distress urgency attribute) among the normal messages.

Flight Deck Display of Messages from either FANS 1/A or ATN B1 CPDLC Applications:

A common flight deck display should be capable of displaying messages with the same operational intent resulting from same message elements that may be implemented differently between FANS 1/A and ATN B1 CPDLC applications. The common format to display FANS 1/A messages may be in accordance with the preferred format denoted in Annex A of ED 122, which is consistent with Doc 4444, 15th Ed, and ATN B1 message formats.

Dual Stack ATS Data Link System Status Indication:

The system should provide the flight crew with a means to clearly identify the status of different modes of the data link system that affect significant operational capability. Examples of different modes of data link may include situations when downlink messages are available in one airspace, but not the other; or messages that may or may not be loadable depending on system status, i.e., ATN B1 or FANS 1/A.

ATSU Connections and Handoffs:

The system should be capable of the following functions:

(1) Proper connection and termination for FANS 1/A ATSU.

(2) Proper connection and termination for ATN B1 ATSU.

(3) Transfer to next data authority (e.g., FANS 1/A ATSU to ATN B1 ATSU), in both directions. This should include proper connection, maintenance of connection and connection termination protocol to ensure that aircraft does not hold two simultaneous active CPDLC connections.

(4) Ability for flight crew to manually terminate existing connection and establish new connection, initiate a DLIC ‘logon’ in both directions (i.e., FANS 1/A-to-ATN B1 and ATN B1-to-FANS 1/A).
(5) Ability for flight crew to verify current and next facility designation or name.

Note: FAA AC 20-140A provides adequate guidance related to the application interoperability, sub-networks and performance designators. (refer to Tables 5.1 and 5.2).

**ATN B1 Data link**

**AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.020 Data Link Services**

When the aircraft has no CPDLC Current Data Authority, the data link aircraft equipment should provide crew members entering an airspace of a data link equipped ATS unit with the capability to initiate a DLIC ‘Logon’ function (e.g. send a CMLogonRequest message) with the applicable ATS unit, in order to identify the aircraft and initiate the use of data link services.

**GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.020 Data Link Services**

Community Specification EN 303 214 ‘Data Link Services (DLS) System’ provides a set of test scenarios that demonstrated using verified ground data link system or ground data link system simulator.

**GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.020 Data Link Services**

(a) **Data Link Initiation Capability (DLIC) Service**

The DLIC service enables the exchange of information between aircraft and ground data link equipment necessary for the establishment of data link communications. It ensures:

(1) the unambiguous association of flight data from the aircraft with flight plan data used by an ATS unit,

(2) the exchange of the supported air–ground application type and version information,

(3) the delivery of the addressing information of the entity hosting the application.

(b) **ATC Communications Management (ACM) Service**

The ACM service provides automated assistance to flight crews for conducting the transfer of ATC communications (voice and data). It includes:

(1) the initial establishment of CPDLC with an ATS unit;

(2) the CPDLC ATC transfer instruction from one ATS unit to the next ATS unit;

(3) the CPDLC ATC instructions for a change in voice channel;

(4) the normal termination of CPDLC with an ATS unit.

(c) **ATC Clearances and Information (ACL) Service**

The ACL service provides flight crews with the ability to:

(1) send requests and reports to air traffic controllers;

(2) receive clearances, instructions and notifications issued by air traffic controllers to flight crews.

(d) **ATC Microphone Check (AMC) Service**

The AMC service provides CPDLC ATC instructions to flight crew(s) requesting him/them to verify the status of his/their voice communication equipment.
AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.025  Protection mechanism

The data link system should comply with the following applicable ATN Baseline 1 standards:

- ICAO Document 9705 (Edition 2) for ICS (Sub-Volume V), ULCS (Sub-Volume IV), CM CPDLC (Sub-Volume II) ASE requirements;
- EUROCAE Document ED-110B;
- ICAO Document 9776 and ARINC 631-6 for VDL Mode 2 multi-frequency operations.

The data link aircraft equipment should provide support for the CPDLC application message integrity check mechanism, with support for ‘default checksum algorithm’ only.

AMC2 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.025  Protection mechanism

Testing demonstrations could be based in two main steps:

- Equipment testing (done by equipment manufacturer) using adequate simulation testing tools.
- System testing, at system test bench and/or at aircraft test level (either on ground or in flight).

Equipment qualification testing data may be reused from the avionics manufacturer, provided that full and unrestricted access to the compliance data is established and maintained. However, the applicant remains responsible for all test data used in the course of compliance demonstration.

AMC3 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.025  Protection mechanism

Where ARINC 631-6 identifies a specific deviation from ICAO Doc 9776 (Manual on VDL Mode 2), the provisions of the former should take precedence.

ARINC 631-6 also references ARINC 750 for definition of Signal Quality Parameter (SQP) levels. Measurements of SQP levels may be passed over the air-ground link as parameters in the XID exchanges.

GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.025  Protection mechanism

EUROCAE Document ED-110B sections 3.3.5.1 and 3.3.6 mentions an ‘ATN Message Checksum Algorithm’ (or ‘Application Message Integrity Check (AMIC)’) that does not exist in ICAO Document 9705 Edition 2. These terms are correctly referenced in ICAO Doc 9705 PDR M60050001.

GM2 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.025  Protection mechanism

Both ICAO Document 9705 and EUROCAE Document ED-110B include requirements for the support of FIS and ADS-C applications. These two applications are not mandated for operations in European airspace. Data link aircraft implementations are free to support these applications and should notify their application availability in the DLIC logon function.
GM3 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.025 Protection mechanism

Further guidance material from EUROCONTROL is available on EUROCONTROL website (www.eurocontrol.int):

- LINK2000+/FLIGHT CREW DATA LINK OPERATIONAL GUIDANCE Version 5.0, Date: 17 December 2012.

Time

AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.040 Universal Time Coordinated (UTC)

A Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) sensor provides an acceptable source of synchronised UTC time.

Time synchronisation is required by ICAO Annex II, chapter 3, section 3.5 as referred by EUROCAE Document ED-110B, section 3.3.2. It is also identified as a safety requirement in EUROCAE Document ED-120 (e.g. SR-ACL-15).

Data link initiation capability (DLIC) service messages

AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.050 DLIC Uplink Messages

Data link aircraft equipment should comply with ICAO Doc 9705 (Edition 2), section 2.1.4 and EUROCAE Document ED-110B, section 2.2.1.

AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.055 DLIC Downlink Messages

Data link aircraft equipment should comply with ICAO Doc 9705 (Edition 2), section 2.1.4 and EUROCAE Document ED-110B, section 2.2.1.

CPDLC messages

AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.070 CPDLC Uplink Messages

The data link system should comply with EUROCAE Document ED-110B section 2.2.3 and comply with the CPDLC message syntax ICAO Doc 9705 (Edition 2), section 2.1.4.

For the sole exception of UM117, the data link system should prepare the appropriate response downlink message to a received uplink message in compliance with EUROCAE Document ED-110B, section 2.2.3.3 Table 2-4. Received uplink messages with response type ‘A/N’ as indicated in the ‘Response’ column should be responded with either DM4 (AFFIRM) or DM5 (NEGATIVE). Received uplink messages with response type ‘R’ as indicated in the ‘Response’ column should be responded with DM3 (ROGER) or with DM1 (UNABLE). When UM117 CONTACT is received, no DM89 MONITORING message should be sent.

The data link aircraft system should also handle unsupported messages (i.e. uplink message not referenced in CS ACNS.B.DLS.B1.050) as specified in EUROCAE Document ED-110B, section 3.3.7.6.
AMC2 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.070 CPDLC Uplink Messages

EUROCAE Document ED-110B requires (in Table 4-3, item 6a) aircraft to send the DM89 (MONITORING [unitname] [frequency]) CPDLC message upon receipt of a UM117 (CONTACT) or UM120 (MONITOR) CPDLC message. The sending of DM89 could manually prepared and sent by the flight crew in response to UM120 but not for UM117.

GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.070 Uplink Messages

The following table associates uplink CPDLC messages to the data link services.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>ACM</th>
<th>ACL</th>
<th>AMC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UM0</td>
<td>UNABLE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM1</td>
<td>STANDBY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM3</td>
<td>ROGER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM4</td>
<td>AFFIRM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM5</td>
<td>NEGATIVE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM19</td>
<td>MAINTAIN [level]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM20</td>
<td>CLIMB TO [level]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM23</td>
<td>DESCEND TO [level]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM26</td>
<td>CLIMB TO REACH [level] BY [time]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM27</td>
<td>CLIMB TO REACH [level] BY [position]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM28</td>
<td>DESCEND TO REACH [level] BY [time]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM29</td>
<td>DESCEND TO REACH [level] BY [position]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM46</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT [level]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM47</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT OR ABOVE [level]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM48</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT OR BELOW [level]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM51</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT [time]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM52</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT OR BEFORE [time]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM53</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT OR AFTER [time]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM54</td>
<td>CROSS [position] BETWEEN [time] AND [time]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM55</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT [speed]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM61</td>
<td>CROSS [position] AT AND MAINTAIN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM64</td>
<td>OFFSET [specifiedDistance] [direction] OF ROUTE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM72</td>
<td>RESUME OWN NAVIGATION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM74</td>
<td>PROCEED DIRECT TO [position]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM79</td>
<td>CLEARED TO [position] VIA [routeClearance]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM80</td>
<td>CLEARED [routeClearance]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM82</td>
<td>CLEARED TO DEVIATE UP TO [specifiedDistance] [direction] OF ROUTE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM92</td>
<td>HOLD AT [position] AS PUBLISHED MAINTAIN [level]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Message</td>
<td>ACM</td>
<td>ACL</td>
<td>AMC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM94</td>
<td>TURN [direction] HEADING [degrees]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM96</td>
<td>CONTINUE PRESENT HEADING</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM106</td>
<td>MAINTAIN [speed]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM107</td>
<td>MAINTAIN PRESENT SPEED</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM108</td>
<td>MAINTAIN [speed] OR GREATER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM109</td>
<td>MAINTAIN [speed] OR LESS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM116</td>
<td>RESUME NORMAL SPEED</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM117</td>
<td>CONTACT [unitname] [frequency]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM120</td>
<td>MONITOR [unitname] [frequency]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM123</td>
<td>SQUAWK [code]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM133</td>
<td>REPORT PRESENT LEVEL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM148</td>
<td>WHEN CAN YOU ACCEPT [level]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM157</td>
<td>CHECK STUCK MICROPHONE [frequency]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM159</td>
<td>ERROR [errorInformation]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM160</td>
<td>NEXT DATA AUTHORITY [facility]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM162</td>
<td>SERVICE UNAVAILABLE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM165</td>
<td>THEN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM171</td>
<td>CLIMB AT [verticalRate] MINIMUM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM172</td>
<td>CLIMB AT [verticalRate] MAXIMUM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM173</td>
<td>DESCEND AT [verticalRate] MINIMUM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM174</td>
<td>DESCEND AT [verticalRate] MAXIMUM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM179</td>
<td>SQUAWK IDENT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM183</td>
<td>[freetext]</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM190</td>
<td>FLY HEADING [degrees]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM196</td>
<td>[freetext]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM203</td>
<td>[freetext]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM205</td>
<td>[freetext]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM211</td>
<td>REQUEST FORWARDED</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM213</td>
<td>[facilitydesignation] ALTIMETER [altimeter]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM215</td>
<td>TURN [direction] [degrees]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM222</td>
<td>NO SPEED RESTRICTION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM227</td>
<td>LOGICAL ACKNOWLEDGEMENT</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM231</td>
<td>STATE PREFERRED LEVEL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM232</td>
<td>STATE TOP OF DESCENT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM237</td>
<td>REQUEST AGAIN WITH NEXT UNIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**GM2 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.070 Uplink Messages**

The above ACL messages correspond to the common subset of ACL messages defined in EUROCAE Document ED-120 section 5.2.1.1.5 as required by Regulation (EC) No 29/2009.

**AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.075 Downlink Messages**

The data link system should comply with EUROCAE Document ED-110B section 2.2.3 and comply with the CPDLC message syntax ICAO Doc 9705 (Edition 2), section 2.1.4.

For the sole exception of UM117, data link aircraft equipment should prepare the appropriate response downlink message to a received uplink message in compliance with EUROCAE Document ED-110B, section 2.2.3.3 Table 2-4. When UM117 CONTACT is received, no DM89 MONITORING message should be sent.

**GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.075 Downlink Messages**

The following table associates downlink messages to the data link services.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>ACM</th>
<th>ACL</th>
<th>AMC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DM0</td>
<td>WILCO</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM1</td>
<td>UNABLE</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM2</td>
<td>STANDBY</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM3</td>
<td>ROGER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM4</td>
<td>AFFIRM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM5</td>
<td>NEGATIVE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM6</td>
<td>REQUEST [level]</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM18</td>
<td>REQUEST [speed]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM22</td>
<td>REQUEST DIRECT TO [position]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM32</td>
<td>PRESENT LEVEL [level]</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM62</td>
<td>ERROR [errorInformation]</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM63</td>
<td>NOT CURRENT DATA AUTHORITY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM65</td>
<td>DUE TO WEATHER</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM66</td>
<td>DUE TO AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM81</td>
<td>WE CAN ACCEPT [level] AT [time]</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM82</td>
<td>WE CANNOT ACCEPT [level]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM89</td>
<td>MONITORING [unitname] [frequency]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM98</td>
<td>[freetext]</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM99</td>
<td>CURRENT DATA AUTHORITY</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM100</td>
<td>LOGICAL ACKNOWLEDGEMENT</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM106</td>
<td>PREFERRED LEVEL [level]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM107</td>
<td>NOT AUTHORIZED NEXT DATA AUTHORITY</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM109</td>
<td>TOP OF DESCENT [time]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GM2 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.075  Downlink Messages

The above ACL messages correspond to the common subset of ACL messages defined in EUROCAE Document ED-120 section 5.2.1.1.5 as required by Regulation (EC) No 29/2009.

GM3 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.075  Optional ACL Downlink Messages

The data link system may also allow the sending the following ACL messages defined in EUROCAE Document ED-120 section 5.2.1.1.5. The message syntax should also comply with ICAO Doc 9705 (Edition 2), section 2.3.4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DM9</td>
<td>REQUEST CLIMB TO [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM10</td>
<td>REQUEST DESCENT TO [level]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM27</td>
<td>REQUEST WEATHER DEVIATION UP TO [specifiedDistance] [direction] OF ROUTE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: To prevent costly retrofitting, implementation of the above optional messages is highly recommended.

Data link services requirements

AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.080  Data Link Initiation Capability (DLIC) Service

(a) The data link aircraft equipment DLIC logon function should comply with the aircraft system PR-DLIC-Init-ET_{RCTP} and PR-DLIC-Init-TT performance values, respectively 6 seconds and 4 seconds, as specified in EUROCAE Document ED-120 Table A-3.

(b) The data link aircraft equipment DLIC contact function should comply with the aircraft system PR-DLIC-Cont-ET_{RCTP} and PR-DLIC-Cont-TT performance values, respectively 12 seconds and 8 seconds, as specified in EUROCAE Document ED-120 Table A-3.

(c) The data link system should:
   (1) not permit data link services when there are incompatible DLIC version numbers;
   (2) reinitate the service with the applicable ATSUs when any of the application or flight information changes;
   (3) insert the relevant initiation data in the initiation messages;
   (4) not affect the intent of the DLIC message during processing (data entry/encoding/transmitting/decoding/displaying).

GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.080  Data Link Initiation Capability (DLIC) Service

The Performance Tables in the main body of EUROCAE Document ED-120 for DLIC (Table 4-8 and Table 4-9), ACM (Table 5-21) and ACL (Table 5-31 and Table 5-32) provide the allocated values for the required transaction performance.

A detailed allocation for Aircraft delays is provided in EUROCAE Document ED-120 Annex A Table A-3.
AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.085  ATC Communications Management (ACM) Service

The data link system for ACM service should comply with the aircraft system PR-ACM-ET\textsubscript{RCTP} and PR-ACM-TT performance values, respectively 6 seconds and 4 seconds, as specified in EUROCAE Document ED-120 Annex A Table A-3.

GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.085  ATC Communications Management (ACM) Service

The Performance Tables in the main body of EUROCAE Document ED-120 for DLIC (Table 4-8 and Table 4-9), ACM (Table 5-21) and ACL (Table 5-31 and Table 5-32) provide the allocated values for the required transaction performance.

A detailed allocation for Aircraft delays is provided in EUROCAE Document ED-120 Annex A/Table A-3.

AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.090  ATC Clearances and Information (ACL) Service

The data link system for ACL service should comply with the aircraft system PR-ACL-ET\textsubscript{RCTP} and PR-ACL-TT performance values, respectively 6 seconds and 4 seconds, as specified in EUROCAE Document ED-120 Annex A Table A-3.

GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.090  ATC Clearances and Information (ACL) Service

The Performance Tables in the main body of EUROCAE Document ED-120 for DLIC (Table 4-8 and Table 4-9), ACM (Table 5-21) and ACL (Table 5-31 and Table 5-32) provide the allocated values for the required transaction performance.

A detailed allocation for Aircraft delays is provided in EUROCAE Document ED-120 Annex A Table A-3.

Interoperability requirements

AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.100  Network Layer Requirements

The ATN Router should comply with ICAO Document 9705 (Edition 2), sections 5.2.4.1, 5.2.4.3 with an IDRP Hold Time value of 900 seconds.

GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.100  Network Layer Requirements

Compression Schemes

Airborne ATN Router may implement several distinct, yet complementary, compression schemes.

Airborne ATN Routers should support the CLNP Header Compression (also known as ‘LREF Compression’). Other compression schemes in ICS are optional.

In addition to the CLNP Header Compression, data link ATN Routers that claims support for optional DEFLATE compression should also support ICAO PDU M0070002 (‘Interoperability impact when deflate compression is used. Non-compliance with Zlib’).

AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.105  Transport Layer Requirements

The ATN End System of the data link aircraft equipment should comply with the Transport Protocol Class 4 specified in ICAO Document 9705 (Edition 2), Sub-volume V, section 5.5.2.

The data link aircraft equipment should implement Transport Protocol Class 4 parameter settings in accordance with the following table:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scope</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inactivity</td>
<td>Inactivity time (I)</td>
<td>A bound for the time after which a transport entity will, if it does not receive a Transport Protocol Data Unit (TPDU), initiate the release procedure to terminate the transport connection.</td>
<td>360 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-transmission</td>
<td>Retransmission time (T1)</td>
<td>A bound for the maximum time the transport entity will wait for acknowledgement before re-transmitting a TPDU. The retransmission time is adaptive.</td>
<td>Initial value 30 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Retransmission (N)</td>
<td>Maximum number of TPDU retransmissions.</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Window</td>
<td>Window time (W)</td>
<td>A bound for the maximum time a transport entity will wait before retransmitting up-to-date window information.</td>
<td>120 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow Control</td>
<td>Local Acknowledgement delay (A1)</td>
<td>A bound for the maximum time which can elapse between the receipt of a TPDU by the local transport entity from the network layer and the transmission of the corresponding acknowledgement.</td>
<td>1 sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.105 Transport Layer Requirements**

**Transport Protocol Classes**

ICAO Doc 9705 (Edition 2), Sub-volume V, section 5.5 identifies both Connection Oriented and Connection-Less Transport Protocols (as specified in, respectively, ISO/IEC 8073 for COTP and ISO/IEC 8602 for CLTP). The only mandated support is for COTP (i.e. CLTP support is not required).

In addition, ISO/IEC 8073 identifies 5 distinct possible implementations for COTP support, ranging from Class 0 (the less constraining to implement, but also the less reliable) to Class 4 (most reliable). The fifth Class, i.e. COTP Class 4 (also known as ‘TP4”), is the only mandated implementation (all other implementations classes are useless for the ATN COTP support).

**Transport Protocol Classes**

In the ATN Baseline 1 SARPS (i.e. Doc 9705, Edition 2), the Transport Class 4 - as known as TP4 - is as specified in ISO 8073, that mandates support for a 16-bits checksum. Such checksum is considered to be insufficient to detect, and thus compensate, all potential miss deliveries of CLNP Packets by the underlying network routers. The analysis that concluded of TP4 inability to detect and compensate all CLNP miss deliveries is available in ICAO PDR M00040002. The use of a 32-bits long checksum is identified as a solution to address this potential issue.
AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.110 Session Layer Requirement

(a) The ATN End System of the data link aircraft equipment should support a Session Protocol as specified in ICAO Doc 9705 (Edition 2), Sub-Volume IV, section 4.4 including the ISO/IEC 8327 Technical Corrigendum 1 (2002), listed in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value (Hex)</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full SPDU Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E8</td>
<td>SCN</td>
<td>Short Connect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F0</td>
<td>SAC</td>
<td>Short Accept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D8</td>
<td>SACC</td>
<td>Short Accept Continue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E0-E3</td>
<td>SRF</td>
<td>Short Refuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>E0: TC retained, transient refusal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>E1: TC retained, persistent refusal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>E2: TC released, transient refusal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>E3: TC released, persistent refusal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A0</td>
<td>SRFC</td>
<td>Short Refuse Continue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The ATN End System Session Protocol of the data link system should make use of the value ‘E3’ to encode the Short Refuse (SRF) SPDU.

AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.115 Presentation Layer Requirement

(a) The ATN End System of the data link aircraft equipment should support a Presentation Protocol as specified in ICAO Doc 9705 (Edition 2), Sub-Volume IV, section 4.5, and listed in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value (Hex)</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full PPDU Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td>SHORT-CP</td>
<td>Short Presentation Connect, unaligned PER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td>SHORT-CPA</td>
<td>Short Presentation Connect Accept, unaligned PER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x2</td>
<td>SHORT-CPR</td>
<td>Short Presentation Connect Reject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Where x = reason code:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>02: presentation-user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12: reason not specified (transient)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>22: temporary congestion (transient)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>32: local limit exceeded (transient)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>42: called presentation address unknown (permanent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>52: protocol version not supported (permanent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>62: default context not supported (permanent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>72: user data not readable (permanent)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The ATN End System Presentation Protocol of the data link aircraft equipment should make use of the value ‘02’ to encode the SHORT-CPR PPDU.

AMC1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.120 Application Layer Requirements

(a) The ATN End System of the data link system should support an ATN Convergence Function compliant with ICAO Doc 9705 (Edition 2), Sub-volume IV, section 4.3.
(b) The ATN End System of the data link system should support an ATN Association Control Service Element (ACSE) compliant with ICAO Doc 9705 (Edition 2), Sub-volume IV, section 4.6.

**GM1 ACNS.B.DLS.B1.120 Application Layer Requirements**

From an OSI perspective, the ATN Application layer is composed of three distinct parts:

- Layer 7a, that includes all application-independent services (Convergence Function + ACSE).
- Layer 7b, that includes all application-dependent service elements (such as the CPDLC-ASE).
- Layer 7c, that includes applications (such as the CPDLC application, that uses CPDLC-ASE for its communications with ground-based systems).
Appendix A — Background information for Voice Communication System

(a) General
This appendix provides additional references, background information, and guidance for maintenance testing, as appropriate to Voice Communication System installations.

(b) Related References

(1) EASA
   i. **ETSO-2C37e, VHF Radio Communication Transmitting Equipment Operating Within the Radio Frequency Range 117.975–137 Megahertz**
   ii. **ETSO-2C38e, VHF Radio Communication Receiving Equipment Operating Within the Radio Frequency Range 117.975–137 Megahertz**
   iii. **ETSO-2C169a VHF Radio Communications Transceiver Equipment Operating Within the Radio Frequency Range 117.975 To 137 Megahertz.**

(2) ICAO

(3) EUROCAE
   ED-23C June 2009 MOPS for airborne VHF Receiver-Transmitter operating in the frequency range 117.975 – 137.000 MHz.
Appendix B — Background information for Data Link System

(a) General
This appendix provides additional references, background information, and guidance for maintenance testing, as appropriate to Data Link System installations.

(b) Related References

(1) ICAO
   i. ICAO Doc 4444 Air Traffic Management 15th Ed 2007
   ii. ICAO Doc 9705 MANUAL OF TECHNICAL PROVISIONS FOR THE AERONAUTICAL TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK (ATN) 2nd Ed 1999

(2) ARINC

(3) FAA
   AC 20-140B Guidelines for Design Approval of Aircraft Data Link Communication Systems Supporting Air Traffic Services (ATS) dated 27/09/2012

(4) EUROCONTROL
   i. LINK2000+/ATC DATA LINK OPERATIONAL GUIDANCE, Version 6.0, Date: 17 December 2012.
   iii. LINK2000+/FLIGHT CREW DATA LINK OPERATIONAL GUIDANCE Version 5.0, Date: 17 December 2012.

(5) ISO/IEC
   i. Document 8073 Information technology -- Open Systems Interconnection -- Protocol for providing the connection-mode transport service Edition 4,0 including amendment 1 dated 09/1998
   ii. Document 8602 Information technology -- Protocol for providing the OSI connectionless-mode transport service Edition 2,0 including amendment 1 dated 12/1996
   iii. ISO/IEC 8327-1:1996 Information technology — Open Systems Interconnection — Connection-oriented Session protocol: Protocol specification TECHNICAL CORRIGENDUM 1 Published 15/05/2002
(6) EUROCAE

i. ED-110B December 2007 Interoperability Requirements Standard for Aeronautical Telecommunication Network Baseline 1 (Interop ATN B1),

ii. ED-120 May 2004 Safety and Performance Requirements Standard For Initial Air Traffic Data Link Services In Continental Airspace (SPR IC) including change 1 and change 2.

iii. ED-122 February 2011 Safety and Performance Standard for Air Traffic Data Link Services in Oceanic and Remote Airspace (Oceanic SPR Standard)

Subpart C — Navigation (NAV)

Reserved
Transponder characteristics

(a) Transponder capabilities.

(1) To be approved, the Mode A/C only transponder should hold an EASA equipment authorisation in accordance with European Technical Standard Order ETSO-C74d, or an equivalent standard that is consistent with ICAO Annex 10 Volume IV, and which is acceptable to EASA.

(2) The Mode A/C only transponder should be a class 2A / class 2B as defined in ETSO-C74d.

Note 1: ETSO-C74d Class 2 equipment meets EUROCAE Document 1/WG9/71 June 1972 with amendment 1 and 2. Amendment 2 contains the requirements and tests to show that the transponder correctly replies to Mode A/C-only all call interrogations and to Mode A/C/S all-call interrogations used by Mode S radars.

Note 2: RTCA DO-144 does not include requirement to reply to Mode A/C/S All-Call and Mode A/C-Only All-Call interrogations and is, therefore, not sufficient to prove the compliance. RTCA DO-144A contains the requirements for the equipment to reply to Mode A/C/S All-Call and Mode A/C-Only All-Call interrogations.

(b) Minimum reply rate

(1) Mode A/C only transponders should be capable of continuously generating at least 500 replies per second for a 15-pulse coded reply.

(2) Transponder installations used solely below 4 500 m (15 000 ft), or below a lesser altitude established by the appropriate authority or by regional air navigation agreement, and in aircraft with a maximum cruising true airspeed not exceeding 90 m/s (175 knots) should be capable of generating at least 1 000 15-pulse coded replies per second for a duration of 0,1 s.

Note: The rate of 1 000 replies per second for a limited duration of 100ms is an acceptable deviation to ETSO-C74d.

(3) Transponder installations operated above 4 500 m (15 000 ft) or in aircraft with a maximum cruising true airspeed in excess of 90 m/s (175 knots) should be capable of generating at least 1 200 15-pulse coded replies per second for a duration of 0,1 s.

Note 1: A 15-pulse reply includes 2 framing pulses, 12 information pulses, and the SPI pulse.

Note 2: The transponder should be capable of replying to this short-term burst rate, even though the transponder may not be capable of sustaining this rate.

Note 3: The rate of 1 200 replies per second for a limited duration of 0,1 s is an acceptable deviation to ETSO-C74d.

(c) Minimum output power level

The transponder power output capability should be verified as follows depending on the aircraft capability:

(1) For aircraft that operate at altitudes exceeding 4 570 m (15 000 ft) or with maximum cruising speed exceeding 90 m/s (175 knots), the class of the transponder declared in the transponder DDP should be Class A.
(2) For aircraft operating at or below 4570m (15 000 ft) with a maximum cruising airspeed of 90 m/s (175 knots) or less, the class of the transponder declared in the transponder DDP should be Class A or Class B.

AMC1 ACNS.D.AC.015 Data transmission

(a) Mode A Code verifications.

(1) Set the Mode A code to 7776 (or other Mode A code agreed with the local Air Traffic Control Unit) through the dedicated flight crew interface. Confirm receipt of correct code by using ground test equipment.

(2) For dual transponder installation with a common control panel, set the Mode A code to 7776 (or other Mode A code agreed with the local Air Traffic Control Unit) and verify that the correct code is received by the ground test equipment. Switch to transponder 2 and verify that the correct Mode A code is received by the ground test equipment.

Note: Agreement of Mode A code values is to be agreed with the local ATC if the transponder is in the visibility of an ATC cooperative surveillance system.

(b) Pressure Altitude verifications

(1) Verify that all Mode A/C transponders report the pressure-altitude encoded in the information pulses in Mode C replies.

Note: more details on the encoding of the altitude can be found in ICAO Annex 10, Vol IV, para 3.1.2.6.5.4.

(2) Select the altitude switch to the ON position and verify that the transponder provides the current aircraft altitude in response to Mode C interrogations.

(3) A sufficient number of test points should be checked to ensure that the altitude reporting equipment and transponder perform their intended function through their entire range while ascending or descending. Where a Gillham altitude encoder is used, tests of each altitude code segment of the encoder (2300, 2500, 3800, 4300, 4800, 6800, 14800, 30800, 70800, 90800, 110800, 126700 if available) should be sufficient to ensure proper operation of each altitude code segment of the encoder.

AMC1 ACNS.D.AC.020 Altitude source

(a) Altimeters compliant with JAA TGL No 6 are an approved and acceptable means of compliance for the altitude source.

(b) Altimeters with a pressure altitude resolution lower than or equal to 7,62 m (25 ft) is an approved and acceptable means of compliance.

Note: Altitude source resolution of 7,62 m (25 ft) or better is required for aeroplanes intended to be used for international air transport as defined in ICAO Annex 6 Part 1 — 6.19.

(c) An altimeter with a pressure altitude resolution lower than or equal to 30 m (100 ft) and greater than 7,62 m (25 ft) is an approved and acceptable means of compliance for aircraft provided that the flight deck interface provides a means to inhibit the transmission of pressure altitude information for aircraft equipped with Gillham encoded altitude.

Note: It is not recommended to install altimeters with a Gillham altitude encoder interface.

(d) Manual or automatic selection of the altitude source are acceptable means of compliance.
AMC1 ACNS.D.AC.025  Flight deck interface

Modes of operation should be identified. Attention should be closely paid to line select keys, touch screens or cursor controlled trackballs as these can be susceptible to unintended mode selection resulting from their location in the flight deck.

Note: Systems not utilising Gillham interfaces may or may not provide a means to inhibit the transmission of pressure altitude.

AMC1 ACNS.D.AC.040  Dual/multiple transponder installation

When dual or multiple transponders are installed on an aircraft, it is highly recommended to use a common control interface/panel to ensure that only one transponder is active at a given time.

AMC1 ACNS.D.AC.045  Antenna Installation

(a) Antenna locations recommended by the aircraft manufacturer do not need to be revalidated.

(b) Antenna performance for new locations may be validated in flight, by ground measurements or simulation modelling.
Section 2 — Mode S Elementary Surveillance

AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.001 Applicability

Provided that the differences listed in Appendix D have also been addressed, then previous compliance declarations with JAA TGL 13 Revision1 (Certification of Mode S Transponder Systems for Elementary Surveillance) supplemented with the additional assessments is another Acceptable Means of Compliance.

Note 1: A list of Mode S ELS related documents is provided in Book 2 Subpart D Appendix B section (b).

Note 2: More information on how the ELS information will be extracted and used by ground surveillance is available in Book 2 Subpart D Appendix B section (c).

Note 3: In accordance with EU Regulation No 1207/2011, aircraft operating flights as general air traffic in accordance with instrument flight rules in the airspace within the ICAO EUR and AFI regions where EU Member States are responsible for the provision of air traffic services are to be compliant with CS ACNS Book 1 Subpart D section 2.

AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.010 Transponder characteristics

(a) Transponder capabilities.

(1) To be approved, the Mode S transponder should hold an EASA equipment authorisation in accordance with European Technical Standard Order ETSO-C112d, or an equivalent standard that is consistent with ICAO Annex 10 Volume IV and which is acceptable to the responsible certification authority

Note: ETSO-C112d requires compliance with EUROCAE ED-73E.

(2) The transponder class can be verified by checking that the transponder DDP declares the transponder level as ‘2’, ‘3’, ‘4’, or ‘5’.

Note: The definition of a level 2 transponder and associated functions can be found in EUROCAE ED-73E paragraph 1.4.2.1, 3.22 and 3.23.

(3) The SI code capability can be verified by checking that the transponder DDP indicates the letter ‘s’ in the transponder capability declaration.

Note 1: The DDP indicates those requirements of ED-73E (or later version) with which the transponder is not compliant with.

Note 2: The transponder SI code capability can be found in EUROCAE ED-73E paragraph 3.18.4.34. SI codes have been allocated to Mode S radars used in Europe and it is, therefore, an important capability to ensure correct detection of the aircraft.

(4) The Elementary Surveillance functionality can be verified by checking that the transponder DDP indicates the letter ‘I’ for ELS or ‘n’ for EHS in the transponder capability declaration.

Note: Such transponders meet the requirements specified in EUROCAE ED-73E 3.29. According to ED-73E, a transponder with the Enhanced Surveillance capability has also the Elementary Surveillance capability.

(5) ACAS compatibility can be verified by checking that the transponder DDP indicates the letter ‘a’ in the transponder capability declaration.

Note: Necessary capabilities to be an ACAS-compatible Mode S transponder are described in section 3.27 of EUROCAE ED-73E.
(b) Minimum output power level: The transponder power output capability should be verified as follows, depending on the aircraft capability:

1. For aircraft that operate at altitudes exceeding 4570 m (15000 ft) or with maximum cruising speed exceeding 90 m/s (175 knots), the class of the transponder declared in the transponder DDP should be **Class 1**.

2. For aircraft operating at or below 4570 m (15000 ft) with a maximum cruising airspeed of 90 m/s (175 knots) or less, the class of the transponder declared in the transponder DDP should be **Class 1** or **Class 2**.

*Note: Classes of equipment are defined in EUROCAE ED-73E 1.4.2.4. Power characteristic is defined in ICAO Annex 10 Volume IV 3.1.1.7.11.*

**AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.015 Data transmission**

Data transmission verifications

(a) Table 1 below provides the parameters that should be verified for Mode S Elementary Surveillance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Message/register</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mode A code and Emergency status</td>
<td>DF5 and DF21</td>
<td>Note 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Pressure altitude</td>
<td>DF4 and DF20</td>
<td>See (b) and (c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>On-the-ground status</td>
<td>CA field in DF11 or FS field in DF4/5/20/21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Aircraft Identification</td>
<td>Register 20₁₆</td>
<td>See (d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>SPI</td>
<td>DF4/5/20/21</td>
<td>See (e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6a</td>
<td>Capability report</td>
<td>CA field in DF11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6b</td>
<td>Data-link capability report and common usage GICB capability report</td>
<td>Register 10₁₆ Register 17₁₆</td>
<td>(g)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>ICAO 24 bit aircraft address</td>
<td>DF11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>RA report</td>
<td>Register 30₁₆ + announcement in DF4/5/20/21</td>
<td>Only for ACAS installation see (f)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note 1: Information about how Mode S ELS data are used by Mode S ground system can be found in Book 2 Appendix B to this CS.*

*Note 2: Downlink Formats (DF) are defined in ICAO Annex 10 Volume IV and EUROCAE ED-73E. A summary can also be found in Book 2 Appendix B.*

*Note 3: It is not recommended to have 2 transponders installed without a common control panel.*

(b) Pressure Altitude

1. The consistency of the altitude reported in Mode C replies and Mode S replies should be checked.
Note: An incorrect installation of altimeters using Gillham encoding may result in altitude transmitted in Mode C replies and no altitude transmitted in Mode S replies.

(2) For aircraft transmitting parameters via the Extended Squitter, for which compliance with Subpart D section 4 is not required, the pressure altitude data should be checked in the Extended Squitter register for airborne position (register 05_{16}).

(c) Pressure altitude resolution transmission

(1) The resolution of the transmitted pressure altitude should be 7.62 m (25 ft) for aircraft equipped with a pressure altitude source having a resolution better than 7.62 m (25 ft) for all altitudes except those above 15 298 m (50 187.5 ft).

(2) Aircraft equipped with altimeters that have a resolution greater than 7.62 m (25 ft) (e.g. 30.48 m (100 ft)) should report their altitude in 30.48 m (100 ft) encoding.

(3) Verify that the encoding of the altitude is appropriate to the altimeter resolution as defined in paragraphs 1 and 2 above.

(4) For aircraft transmitting parameters via the Extended Squitter, for which compliance with Subpart D section 4 is not required, the pressure altitude resolution data should be checked in the Extended Squitter register for airborne position (register 05_{16}).

(d) Aircraft Identification

(1) For aircraft transmitting parameters via the Extended Squitter, for which compliance with Subpart D section 4 is not required, the Aircraft Identification received via the Extended Squitter should be checked to ensure that it is identical to the information transmitted in register 20_{16}.

(e) Special Position Indication (SPI)

The FS field should report FS = 4 or 5 for 18 seconds (+/-1 second) in replies DF4, DF5, DF20 or DF21 after the SPI (IDENT) has been manually activated.

Note: Flight Status values can be found in ICAO Annex 10, Vol IV, paragraph 3.1.2.6.5.1.

(f) ACAS active Resolution Advisory report

For aircraft that have ACAS II installed, no undue RA report should be announced (DR field never set to 2, 3, 6 or 7) within (5 minutes).

(g) Common usage GICB capability report: BDS 17_{16} = 0 is an acceptable means of compliance for transponders that are strictly ELS (not transmitting other parameters).

(h) Transmission of other parameters

When one or more other airborne data items are transmitted, they should be verified as proposed in AMC1 ACNS.D.EHS..

Note 1: The minimum data transmission verification of transponder also having ADS-B ES capabilities has been defined above. Transponders that are transmitting parameters other than the minimum tested above, are encouraged to demonstrate compliance with Subpart D section 4.

Note 2: The implementation of registers E3_{16}, E4_{16}, E5_{16} and E6_{16} is recommended.

AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.020 On-the-ground status determination

The automatic determination of the on-the-ground status should be obtained from:

(a) Weight On Wheel (WOW) sensor: When the aircraft is equipped with an automatic sensor to determine if the aircraft is on the ground (i.e. Weight On Wheel sensor), this sensor should be used as the on-the-ground status source of the transponder. For Aircraft with transponders that have access to at least one of the following parameters (ground speed,
radio altitude, airspeed) the following validation check should be performed when detected 'on the ground' and the air/ground status should be overridden and changed to 'airborne' if: [Ground speed > 50 m/s (100 knots) OR airspeed > 50 m/s (100 knots) OR radio altitude > 15 m (50 feet)].

Note: Care should be taken to ensure the wiring of the WOW to the correct transponder pins.

(b) automatic algorithm: If ground speed, radio altitude, or airspeed parameters are being used in the algorithm and the 'on-the-ground' condition is being reported or if the on-the-ground status has been commanded via the TCS subfield, the on-the-ground status is to be overridden and changed to 'airborne' if:

\[
\text{Ground Speed OR Airspeed > X or Radio height > 15 m (50 ft)}.
\]

Note 1: Care should be taken to ensure that the chosen threshold values of X are such that the aircraft can never report 'on ground' status when in the air, and should be based on the aircraft nominal performance.

Note 2: Systems that support Enhanced Surveillance and ADS-B might use available airborne parameters in their automatic algorithm to determine if they are on the ground. More information can be found in Subpart D section 4.

AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.025 Altitude source

(a) Altimeters compliant with JAA TGL No 6 are an approved and Acceptable Means of Compliance for the altitude source.

(b) Altimeters with a pressure altitude resolution lower than or equal to 7.62 m (25 ft) are an approved and Acceptable Means of Compliance.

Note: Altitude source resolution lower than or equal to 7.62 m (25 ft) is required for aeroplanes intended to be used for international air transport as defined in ICAO Annex 6 Part 1 — 6.19.

(c) An altimeter with a pressure altitude resolution lower than or equal to 30 m (100 ft) and greater than 7.62 m (25 ft) is an approved and Acceptable Means of Compliance for aircraft provided that the following provisions are implemented:

1. There is no conversion of Gillham encoded data to another format before inputting to the transponder unless failure detection can be provided, and the resolution (quantisation) is set in the transmitted data to indicate 30 m (100 ft);

   Note 1: It is not recommended to install altimeters with a Gillham altitude encoder interface as it supports a resolution of only 30 m (100 ft).

   Note 2: Losses or errors of pressure altitude have an impact on the provision of separation by ATC. It is, therefore, important to design the altitude pressure source to minimise the loss of this data or the provision of erroneous data.

   Note 3: Further guidance on altitude measurement and coding systems may be found in EUROCAE document ED-26.

2. Altitude source comparison;

   For aircraft equipped with ACAS II where the available source of pressure altitude information is only in Gillham encoded format, detection of an altitude source or encoder failure can be satisfied by means of dual independent altitude corrected sensors together with an altitude data comparator (which may be incorporated and enabled in the transponder). Similar provision is also acceptable for alternative altitude information sources that do not signal erroneous data.

   The flight deck interface should provide a means to inhibit the transmission of pressure altitude information for aircraft equipped with a Gillham encoded altitude interface.
(d) Manual or automatic selection of the altitude source are acceptable means of compliance.

**AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.030  Flight deck interface**

Modes of operation should be identified. Attention should be closely paid to line select keys, touch screens or cursor controlled trackballs as these can be susceptible to unintended mode selection resulting from their location in the flight deck.

**AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.050  Dual/multiple transponder installation**

When dual or multiple transponders are installed on an aircraft, a common control interface/panel should be provided to ensure that only one transponder is active at a given time, and to ensure that the Mode A code and Aircraft Identification changes are applied to the active transponder.
AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.060  Antenna Installation

(a) Antenna locations recommended by the aircraft manufacturer do not need to be revalidated.

(b) Antenna performance for new locations should be validated in flight by ground measurements or simulation modelling.

(c) The distance between ATC Transponder antenna should be at least 40 cm and the distance between ATC Transponder antenna and other antenna (e.g. ACAS, DME) should satisfy the appropriate isolation and longitudinal separation limits.

(d) When the Mode S ELS surveillance installation is using two antennas, the horizontal distance between the two antennas should be less than 7.6m

AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.065  Antenna Diversity

(a) The aircraft maximum cruising true airspeed may be determined using one of the 3 following options:

(1) Where the Aircraft Flight Manual or Pilot’s Operating Handbook gives more than one table of true airspeed values for a range of temperatures, the table which gives the maximum true airspeed, should be used;

(2) For some aircraft, the maximum cruising true airspeed is not obtained at the maximum operating altitude. In those cases, the maximum true airspeed has to be considered and not the true airspeed at maximum operating altitude;

(3) Aircraft which do not state the maximum cruising true airspeed under ISA conditions in their Aircraft Flight Manual or Pilot’s Operating Handbook, may use the following alternative method to calculate maximum cruising true airspeed:

(i) Use the maximum operating values of altitude and airspeed (i.e. VNO, or VMO/MMO as applicable) quoted in the Limitations section of the Aircraft Flight Manual or Pilot’s Operating Handbook to calculate the maximum cruising true airspeed of the aircraft. If the aircraft is unpressurised, an altitude of 8 000 feet may be used as the maximum ‘normal’ operating altitude.

(ii) For example, using a maximum ‘normal’ operating altitude of 2 400 m (8 000 feet) for an unpressurised aircraft, and a maximum operating airspeed of 110 m/s (215 knots), (as stated in the Aircraft Flight Manual or Pilot’s Operating Handbook, e.g. VNO = 110 m/s (215 knots)) then the aircraft has an equivalent TAS capability of 128 m/s (250 knots) in the ICAO Standard atmosphere. The calculation may be made using a pilot’s TAS computer.

(b) For airships, the applicant should demonstrate the need or otherwise for antenna diversity. The demonstration should be based on the construction techniques and size of the airship.

(c) The transponder DDP should indicate the letter ‘d’ in the transponder capability declaration to indicate antenna diversity capability.
Section 3 — Mode S Enhanced Surveillance

AMC1 ACNS.D.EHS.001 Applicability

Provided that the differences listed in Appendix E have also been addressed, then previous compliance declarations with EASA AMC 20-13 (Certification of Mode S Transponder Systems for Enhanced Surveillance) supplemented with the additional assessments is another Acceptable Means of Compliance.

Note: In accordance with EU Regulation No 1207/2011, fixed wing aircraft having a maximum take off mass greater than 5 700 kg or a maximum cruising true airspeed greater than 128.6 m/s (250 knots) and operating flights as general air traffic in accordance with instrument flight rules in the airspace within the ICAO EUR and AFI regions where EU Member States are responsible for the provision of air traffic services are to be compliant with CS ACNS Book 1 Subpart D section 3.

AMC1 ACNS.D.EHS.010 Transponder characteristics

(a) The means of compliance defined in AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.010 should be followed, with the exception that the transponder DDP should indicate a label ‘n’ in the transponder capability declaration to reflect ELS and EHS capabilities.

Note: Such transponders meet the requirements specified in EUROCAE ED-73E section 3.30 for EHS capabilities. If the transponder is compliant with EUROCAE ED-73E, it provides register format corresponding to a Mode S sub-network version 5.

(b) The Mode S sub-network format should be 3 or above.

Note: The use of the highest Mode S sub-network version format is recommended.

AMC1 ACNS.D.EHS.015 Data transmission

(a) The compliance verification should include a list of transponder registers supported by the installation, including the parameters that are available in each register. The list should contain the registers that are indicated as available in the Mode Specific Capability reports (18_16 to 1C_16), except the following registers:

(1) registers managed by the transponder to support the Mode S airborne initiated protocol (02_16, 03_16, 04_16);
(2) registers containing extended squitters information (05_16, 06_16, 07_16, 08_16, 09_16, 0A_16);
(3) aircraft capability reporting (10_16 to 1F_16);
(4) Aircraft Identification (20_16);
(5) ACAS RA report (30_16); and
(6) transponder dependent information (5F_16, E3_16, E4_16, E7_16, EA_16).

Note 1: An example of a minimum list of registers to support EHS is provided in Subpart D Appendix C.

Note 2: An example of other registers and parameters is provided in Subpart D Appendix C.

(b) Verification of operation

(1) All the transponder registers containing data as defined in (a) should be verified to ensure correct data is transmitted by the Mode S transponder.

Note: Format and resolution of airborne parameters can be found in ED-73E Volume 2 or in ICAO Doc 9871 Edition 2.
(2) Where a register is declared available but a parameter within that register is not available, it is necessary to verify that the status of the parameter is declared invalid in the corresponding aircraft register.

Note 1: Some parameters are particularly difficult to measure statically. To ensure that these parameters (e.g. Roll Angle, Track Angle Rate, Inertial Vertical Velocity) are correctly received from the sensor and transmitted by the transponder, it is acceptable to test that the correct transponder register is transmitted (by the transponder), that the value of the parameter status bit is valid (status bit = 1), and the value of the parameter field is set to zero when aircraft is not moving on the ground. Alternatively, for such parameters which remain invalid in static condition, ground test may use simulation if simulated data bus signal meets sensor data bus specifications, the same data bus provides at least one other valid parameter which is tested and sensor specifications clearly establish availability conditions and format of the simulated data parameter.

Note 2: Due to the limitations of the static tests, a recommended option is to perform a flight and record the content of the different transponder registers (as extracted by a Mode S ground station) to verify that all parameters listed in (a) are changing in accordance with pilot input and aircraft attitude and manoeuvre.

Note 3: To minimise the certification effort for transponder follow-on installations, the applicant may claim from the responsible authority credit for applicable certification and test data obtained from equivalent aircraft installations. This is acceptable for a parameter only if all related equipment connected to the transponders are of the same type and same software revision number.

(c) Aircraft parameters

(1) Selected Altitude

(i) MCP/FCU Selected Altitude
Selected level input to the MCP or FCU should be used.
In case there is no MCP/FCU Selected Altitude function, it is accepted to use the information provided by an altitude alerter.

(ii) FMS Selected Altitude
When available, it is recommended that the FMS Selected altitude field is provided.
Note: This will allow the reporting of the intermediate selected altitudes during applications (e.g. Continuous Descent Operations) when the FMS provides the guidance input to the auto-pilot.

(iii) MCP/FCU mode bits
When data is available, it is recommended (optional) to provide information on autopilot mode which is selected by the flight crew.
Note: It is accepted to set this bit to zero rather than providing wrong information.

(iv) Target Altitude source bits
The target altitude source bits are used to indicate the source (e.g. FCU/MCP, FMS) which provides the next level at which the aircraft will level off. This is also referred to as the Target Altitude. However, the necessary data may be inconsistent or not accessible. In this case, the status of target altitude source bits should indicate no source information provided (set to zero).
Note: It is also acceptable that status of target altitude source bits is set to valid and target altitude source is set to 00 to indicate unknown.

(2) Vertical Rate
The Barometric Altitude Rate should contain value solely derived from barometric measurement.

When different sources are available, the Inertial Vertical Velocity should contain data coming from the most accurate and steady source.

*Note 1:* The vertical rate can be provided in the Barometric Altitude Rate and/or the Inertial Vertical Velocity fields of register 60\textsubscript{16}. Both the Barometric Altitude Rate and the Inertial Vertical Velocity can be transmitted simultaneously.

*Note 2:* The Barometric Altitude Rate is usually very unsteady.

*Note 3:* The Inertial Vertical Velocity (derived from IRS, AHRS and/or GPS) information is more filtered and smoothed.

(3) Barometric Pressure Setting
If operating with reference to the standard pressure setting, the Barometric Pressure Setting field should indicate standard pressure value equivalent to 1.01325 \(10^5\) Pa.

(4) Track Angle Rate or True Airspeed
If Track Angle Rate data cannot be readily provided due to the aircraft configuration, True Airspeed data should be substituted.

(5) Roll Angle
It is difficult to test different values of Roll Angle when the aircraft is on the ground. To ensure that this parameter is correctly received from the sensor and transmitted by the transponder, it is acceptable to test that the Roll Angle field in register 50\textsubscript{16} contains a credible value, consistent with aircraft roll angle on the ground, and the Roll Angle Status bit indicates valid data.

(6) True Track Angle
It is difficult to test different values of True Track Angle when the aircraft is on the ground. To ensure that this parameter is correctly received from the sensor and transmitted by the transponder, it is acceptable to test that the True Track Angle field in register 50\textsubscript{16} contains a value and the True Track Angle Status bit indicates valid data.

(7) Ground Speed
It is difficult to test different values of Ground Speed when the aircraft is on the ground. To ensure that this parameter is correctly received from the sensor and transmitted by the transponder, it is acceptable to test that the Ground Speed field in register 50\textsubscript{16} contains a value, consistent with the speed of the aircraft on the ground (close to zero if the aircraft is not moving) and the Ground Speed Status bit indicates valid data.

(8) Magnetic Heading
To ensure that this parameter is correctly received from the sensor and transmitted by the transponder, it is acceptable to test that the Magnetic Heading field in register 60\textsubscript{16} contains a value, consistent with the magnetic heading of the aircraft, and the Magnetic Heading Status bit indicates valid data.

(9) Indicated Airspeed or Mach No
Indicated Airspeed and Mach No are considered as a single parameter. Both should be provided where available.
To ensure that these parameters are correctly received from the sensor and transmitted by the transponder, it is acceptable to test that the Indicated Airspeed or Mach fields in register 60 contain a value, consistent with the indicated airspeed or Mach No generated via a test set, and the Indicated Airspeed or Mach Status bits indicate valid data.

(d) Sensor Sources

Particular attention should be given to the interface between data sources and transponders when multiple transponders and multiple sensors are employed. In this context, ‘sensors’ refers to FMS, IRS, AHRS, ADS, GPS, or Data Concentrator (or other) systems used to provide data to the transponder.

The crew should be aware, at all times, which sensors are providing information to the active transponder.

In an installation, where automatic sensor selection for the active transponder is not provided, the captain’s side transponder should utilise the captain’s side sensors, and the co-pilot’s side transponder should utilise the co-pilot’s side sensors.

Data parameters from different sensors of the same type should not be mixed.

Note: For example, Mode-C or Mode-S altitude reporting information from ADC source #1 should not be mixed with reporting of TAS, Baro Vertical Rate, Mach from ADC source #2. In this case, partially blocking of data output from either ADC source #1 or #2 will cause uncorrelated results. This could result in problems with ATC ground processing of the data.

Where only single sensors are available (i.e. single FMS), it is permissible to connect the single sensor to multiple transponders. It should be noted that this may result in reduced operational availability should the single sensor fail.
Section 4 — 1090 MHz Extended Squitter ADS-B Out

GM1 ACNS.D.ADSB.001  Applicability
With respect to 1 090 MHz ES ADS-B Out installations, the material in this section is to a large degree in line with the corresponding FAA AC 20-165A material. Differences between the two documents are listed in Appendix J. This guidance may be of use when showing of compliance with both documents is required.

The requirements of CS ACNS.D.ADSB fully cover (and exceed) the requirements of AMC 20-24 (Certification Considerations for the Enhanced ATS in Non-Radar Areas using ADS-B Surveillance (ADS-B-NRA) Application via 1090 MHz Extended Squitter). Therefore, aircraft that comply with CS ACNS.D.ADSB also comply with AMC 20-24 but not vice versa.

The approval of on-board systems receiving and processing ADS-B messages in support of air-to-air applications is outside the scope of Subpart D section 4.

Note: In accordance with EU Regulation No 1207/2011, aircraft having a maximum take off mass greater than 5 700 kg or a maximum cruising true airspeed greater than 128.6 m/s (250 knots) and operating flights as general air traffic in accordance with instrument flight rules in the airspace within the ICAO EUR and AFI regions where EU Member States are responsible for the provision of air traffic services are to be compliant with CS ACNS Book 1 Subpart D section 4.

AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.010  ADS-B Out system approval

Equipment Qualification

For equipment qualification, refer to AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.030 through to AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.090.

The ADS-B Out functionality should be demonstrated by ground testing, using ramp test equipment where appropriate, that verifies during nominal system operation, the correctness of the aircraft derived surveillance data contained in the ADS-B messages, and the functioning of system monitoring tools/fault detectors including any ADS-B self-test features.

AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.020(a-b)  ADS-B Out data parameters

During ADS-B Out system installation testing, all the parameters that are broadcast should be demonstrated to be correct for each installed ADS-B transmit unit, i.e. the transmitted data should be in line with the respective source data.

The Emitter Category, Aircraft Length and Width and GPS Antenna Offset parameters might be either configured as a fixed value during ADS-B Out system installation, or provided via a variable data interface. In both cases, during installation, the respective settings should be verified to be correctly set.

The ADS-B Horizontal Position System Design Assurance (SDA) parameter indicates the probability of an ADS-B Out system malfunction causing false or misleading position information or position quality metrics to be transmitted. SDA may be pre-set at installation for systems that do not utilise multiple position sources with different design assurance levels, otherwise the system should be capable of adjusting the SDA broadcast parameter to match the position source being employed at the time of transmission. ADS-B transmit equipment that is compliant with AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.030 and that is directly connected to a position source compliant with AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.070 may set the SDA to ‘two’ without further analysis. For more complex ADS-B installations, a system safety assessment is required to set the SDA. Basically, the lowest design assurance level of one system in the horizontal position data transmission chain should define the SDA value.

Additional guidance material on the required surveillance data parameters are provided in Appendix H Part 1 and Part 2.
Appendix H Part 6 provides matrices of the so-called BDS register fields as used by the 1090 ES ADS-B transmit unit to broadcast the ADS-B Out parameters. These matrices detail the ADS-B Out data requirements at data field level for general understanding and in support of integration testing, as appropriate.

If installations transmit ADS-B Out data that do not meet some requirements of the Subpart D Section 4, the respective data should only be transmitted with a ‘zero’ quality indication (if a quality indication is defined in the ADS-B Out transmit system).

AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.025(a) Provision of data — Approved sources

(a) See AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.070-090 for details on the approval of the respective data sources.

(b) For transmission of optional data items, the following provisions should be considered:

(1) Airspeed

In case of a loss of GNSS horizontal velocity data, the ADS-B transmit unit normally switches to broadcast airspeed information (using subtypes 3 and 4 of register 0916).

Therefore, if airspeed data is provided to the ADS-B transmit unit, it should be provided by an approved airspeed source that is providing data intended for use by the flight crew. An air data computer meeting the minimum performance requirements of holding an EASA equipment authorisation in accordance with ETSO-C106 (JTSO-C106) is an acceptable source.

(2) Heading

In case of a loss GNSS ground track and if heading is provided to the ADS-B transmit unit, the heading source should hold an EASA equipment authorisation in accordance with ETSO-C5e (JTSO-C5e) or any revision of ETSO-C6d (JTSO-C6d).

(3) Other Data Parameters

The Intent Change Flag should be set as appropriate to indicate the availability of information in the Mode S registers 4016 to 4216.

If available, Selected Heading information should come from approved data sources.

The 1090 ES IN capability field should be set correctly.

AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.025(c) Provision of data — Data quality indication and associated data

Data quality indications for the horizontal position containment bound (NIC) and horizontal position accuracy bound (NACp) should be provided to the ADS-B transmit unit together with the corresponding horizontal position information within the same data set.

Data quality indications for the horizontal position source integrity level (SIL) and system design assurance level (SDA) may be preset at installation. Systems that utilise multiple GNSS-based position sources with different design assurance levels or source integrity levels, should be capable of adjusting the SDA and SIL quality indications to match the position source that is employed at the time of transmission.

The horizontal velocity accuracy bound (NACv) and vertical geometric altitude accuracy bound (GVA) should be dynamically provided to the ADS-B transmit unit together with the corresponding velocity and geometric altitude information within the same data set. However, NACv and GVA may be also preset at installation.

For further guidance on the ADS-B data quality indicators, refer to AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.070(a).
AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.030  ADS-B Transmit unit installation

To be approved, the ADS-B transmit unit should hold an EASA equipment authorisation in accordance with ETSO-C166b and ETSO-C112d, including any additional requirements as required to comply with the provision of the AMC’s to Subpart D section 4 (e.g. On-the-ground status determination and maximum NIC encoding). Where such additional requirements apply, it is expected that the ADS-B transmit unit manufacturer supplies compliance information through a Declaration of Design and Performance (DDP), or an equivalent document.

The broadcast of Selected Altitude and Barometric Pressure Setting are optional for equipment meeting ETSO-C166b and equipment should implement this optional functionality if available and in a suitable format.

If using earlier versions of ETSO-C112( ), it should to be demonstrated that all applicable requirements from EUROCAE ED-102A have been implemented. This can be achieved by a positive deviation of compliance to previous versions of EUROCAE ED-73 that have been documented in the Declaration of Design and Performance (DDP).

AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.040  Antenna Diversity

The 1090 ES data protocol includes a bit to indicate, at any time, if only one or both antennas (if installed) are functional. The corresponding parameter for the Single Antenna bit is contained in register 6516 (message element bit ‘30’) and should be set to the appropriate value.

Note 1: For detailed guidance on the required antenna diversity as a function of aircraft maximum cruising true airspeed capability, refer to AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.065.

Note 2: For further guidance on antenna installations, see CS ACNS.D.ELS.060, CS ACNS.D.ELS.065, AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.060 and AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.065.

AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.055  Simultaneous operation of ADS-B transmit units

Manual switching between transmitters is considered acceptable.

Note: The requirement applies to ADS-B transmit units broadcasting on the same data link. It does not preclude simultaneous operation of dual link installations.

AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.060  On-the-ground status Determination

For aircraft with retractable landing gear, the on-the-ground status determination is typically provided through a landing gear weight-on-wheels switch. For aircraft that have fixed-gear, the ADS-B Out system should be able to determine the air-ground status of the aircraft using other means.

Installations that provide a means to automatically determine on-the-ground status based on input from other aircraft sensors are acceptable if they are demonstrated to accurately detect the status. Otherwise, ground status validation algorithms should be implemented, using speed thresholds that match the typical aircraft's rotation speed as closely as possible.

It is noted that for the validation of a directly determined on-the-ground status that is not validated outside the ADS-B transmit function, validation against the aircraft’s typical rotation speed (rather than a fixed value of 50 m/s (100 knots)) might not have been tested in accordance with ETSO-C166b. If that is the case, it is expected that the ADS-B transmit unit manufacturer supplies compliance information through a Declaration of Design and Performance (DDP), or an equivalent document.

Detailed guidance material is provided in Appendix I.

AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.070  Horizontal Position and Velocity Data Sources

(a) GNSS Standards

(1) Basic GNSS System Approval
To be approved, the horizontal position and velocity data source should hold an EASA equipment authorisation in accordance with either ETSO-C129a, or ETSO-C196, or ETSO-C145/ETSO-C146, including the additional qualification requirements as specified in paragraph (2) below.

(2) Additional GNSS Receiver Qualification Requirements

In order to fully address the standard associated with ADS-B Out, an ETSO authorisation alone may not be sufficient to ensure ADS-B compatibility. The position and velocity source should also comply with the following requirements (i) to (vi).

It is expected that compliance with these requirements is demonstrated by the equipment manufacturer and documented in the Declaration of Design and Performance (DDP), or an equivalent document. Detailed guidance material on the qualification requirements is provided in Appendix H Part 5.

(i) GNSS system must provide a latitude and longitude output.

*Note: ETSO-C129a does not cater for full compliance with this requirement.*

(ii) The horizontal position integrity containment should have been qualified as per Appendix H Part 5 paragraph 1;

*Note: Horizontal Uncertainty Level (HUL) information does not fulfil CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070.*

(iii) The maximum time to alert for the indication of a signal-in-space data integrity failure should be 10 seconds as per Appendix H in Part 5 paragraph 1;

(iv) Navigation modes that would force the NIC value temporarily to ‘zero’ whilst the actual horizontal position integrity containment bound would meet the NIC requirements in Appendix H Part 3 Table 20, should not be installed.

(v) The horizontal position source accuracy output should have been qualified as per Appendix H Part 5 paragraph 2;

(vi) The horizontal position source latency and timing characteristics should have been documented (see Appendix H Part 5 paragraph 3);

(vii) The horizontal velocity accuracy output should have been qualified. If a dynamic horizontal velocity accuracy output is not provided, the transmitted horizontal velocity accuracy should be based on a worst case accuracy. If a dynamic horizontal velocity accuracy output is provided, the source should have been qualified for this quality indication accordingly as per Appendix H Part 5 paragraph 4.

In addition, a means should be provided to establish the condition when the horizontal velocity track angle accuracy exceeds plus/minus ‘eight’ degrees as per Appendix H Part 5 paragraph 4.

(3) Interface Interoperability Aspects

It should be verified that the position and velocity information (including their respective quality indicators) received from the source are correctly interpreted by the ADS-B equipment.

(i) Horizontal Position Integrity Containment Bound

Some approved horizontal position sources may incorrectly output horizontal position integrity containment bounds of less than 75 meters. In such cases, it is accepted that the transmit unit limits the NIC value to ‘eight’.
It is expected that the ADS-B transmit unit manufacturer supplies compliance information through a Declaration of Design and Performance (DDP), or an equivalent document.

(ii) Horizontal Velocity Format

The position and velocity source manufacturer should provide information describing how the horizontal velocity information is output (i.e. in a ground speed/track angle format versus north/east velocity format) and the protocols used.

(4) Data Quality Indicator Testing

By design and under nominal GNSS satellite constellation conditions, an ADS-B Out system that is compliant with CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070 should meet the required values of the horizontal position NIC, NACp, SIL and horizontal velocity NACv quality indicators (refer to Appendix H Part 3 Table 20).

(b) Installation Guidance

The GNSS based position sources should be installed in accordance with FAA AC 20-138B (or later).

Note: EASA is developing GNSS installation guidance, once published, should be used instead of the FAA material.

(c) Multiple Position and Velocity Data Sources

(1) Multiple Source Approval

Any position and velocity source that is interfaced to the ADS-B transmit unit, should meet the requirements of CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070.

(2) Source Priority

If multiple horizontal position data sources are interfaced with the ADS-B transmit unit, priority should be given to the source that provides the best ADS-B performance with respect to the horizontal position integrity containment bound (NIC).

A change of the selection between sources should only take place when the not selected source has exceeded the NIC performance of the selected source for several seconds.

(d) Interconnecting Avionics

Interconnecting avionics between a horizontal position and velocity data source and the ADS-B transmit unit are not recommended.

If installed, interconnecting avionics should:

(1) not output horizontal position and velocity data that has been blended with data from other sources;

(2) use GNSS horizontal velocity data to extrapolate the horizontal position data if extrapolation is deployed; and

(3) maintain full source resolution of the horizontal position and velocity data.

Interconnecting avionics that do not comply with the above may dilute the horizontal position accuracy achieved with GNSS-based sources, with detrimental effects on the usability of the ADS-B Out system.

Note: closely coupled GPS/IRS systems are not considered as interconnecting avionics.
AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.080 Data Sources as defined by Mode S Elementary and Enhanced Surveillance

(a) General Requirements
For the requirements and general guidance on the data sources providing the Mode S Elementary and Enhanced surveillance parameters, the following references to CS ACNS.D.ELS and CS ACNS.D.EHS apply:

1. Aircraft Identification: CS ACNS.D.ELS.(a)(3);
2. Mode A Code: CS ACNS.D.ELS.(a)(1);
3. SPI: CS ACNS.D.ELS.(a)(2);
4. Emergency Mode/Status: CS ACNS.D.ELS.(a)(1);
5. Pressure Altitude: CS ACNS.D.ELS.025;
6. MCP/FCU Selected Altitude: AMC1 ACNS.D.EHS. (c)(1);
7. Barometric Pressure Setting: AMC1 ACNS.D.EHS.;
8. ACAS Operational/Resolution Advisory: AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.015; and
9. ICAO 24 bit Address: CS ACNS.D.ELS.050.

(b) Emergency Status
When transmitting the Mode A emergency status codes, the additional specific bits should be set (see Appendix H, Part 1, Definition 10).

(c) Pressure Altitude — NICbaro
For aircraft with an approved, non-Gillham altitude source, the Barometric Altitude Integrity Code 'NICbaro' should be set to ‘one’.
For aircraft where the pressure altitude that is based on a Gillham coded input that has not been cross-checked against another source of pressure altitude, the ‘NICbaro’ should be set to ‘zero’. Otherwise, the ‘NICbaro’ should be set to ‘one’.
For general guidance on the ADS-B 'NICbaro' indicator that is associated with Pressure Altitude information, refer to Appendix H, Part 1, Definition 9.

(d) Vertical Rate
The Vertical Rate information should come from the most accurate and steady source.
In order to ensure that minimum performance requirements are met for Vertical Rate information, the following source prioritisation should be applied:
- Hybrid Vertical Rate Source: the information may be taken from a hybrid system which filters barometric vertical rate with an inertial reference unit (IRU) vertical rate and GNSS vertical rate, provided the accuracy of the vertical rate output is at least as good as barometric vertical rate sources (e.g. ETSO-C106).
- Blended Vertical Rate Source: the information may be taken from a blended system which filters IRU vertical rate and barometric vertical rate, provided the accuracy of the vertical rate output is at least as good as barometric vertical rate sources (e.g. ETSO-C106).
- Barometric Vertical Rate Source: the information may be taken from an air data computer (ADC) holding an EASA equipment authorisation in accordance with ETSO-C106 or a vertical velocity instrument holding an EASA equipment authorisation in accordance with applicable revisions of ETSO-C8(7).
- GNSS Vertical Rate Source: GNSS vertical velocity equipment which have not been qualified in accordance with CS-ACNS.D.ADSB.070 should not be interfaced with the ADS-B transmit unit.
Vertical Rate from an inertial sensor that is not blended with barometric altitude should not be transmitted. Neither should ADS-B transmit units derive a barometric altitude rate by sampling barometric altitude measurements.

The source bit for vertical rate (1090 ES register 09, message bit ‘36’) should be coded as barometric when utilising barometric rate from an air data computer, or when using a blended or hybrid vertical rate. The source bit for vertical rate should only be coded as geometric when using vertical rate from a GNSS source.

Note: due to differences in the respective transmit formats, the above source prioritisation differs in some parts with the guidance applicable to Mode S Enhanced Surveillance as provided in AMC1 ACNS.D.EHS.015.

For general guidance on Vertical Rate data sources, refer to Appendix H, Part 1, Definition 14.

(e) Selected Altitude (and related Modes)

With respect to the various status and mode fields contained in register 62 (subtype 1), the respective provisions of AMC1 ACNS.D.EHS. (c)(1) apply to the Selected Altitude Type, Status of MCP/FCU Mode Bits, VNAV Mode Engaged, Altitude Hold Mode, and Approach Mode information.

The population of the additional Autopilot Engaged and LNAV Mode Engaged fields status bits are optional but should be populated where the data is available.

AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.085 Geometric Altitude

(a) Geometric Altitude data source

The position source should output a vertical position accuracy metric to support the encoding of the Geometric Altitude GVA quality indicator.

GNSS position sources should provide the geometric altitude accuracy through the vertical figure of merit (VFOM). If that is the case, the vertical position source accuracy output by a GNSS receiver should have been qualified as per Appendix H Part 5 paragraph 5.

If the position source does not output a qualified vertical accuracy metric, the GVA parameter should be set to ‘zero’.

For general guidance on the GVA encoding, refer to Definition 20 in Appendix H of Subpart D.

(b) Geometric Altitude Reference

A GNSS position source compliant with CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070 provides Geometric Altitude, in its native format, as geocentric height above the earth’s ellipsoid shape. Height Above Ellipsoid (HAE) is described by the WGS-84 format.

Another altitude reference is described by the earth’s geoid, a surface on which the gravitational potential is constant and which approximates the (local) mean levels of all the earth’s seas. The difference between the mathematically idealised smooth ellipsoid and irregular geoid surfaces varies between +106m to -85m across the earth. The related Mean Sea Level (MSL) altitude is then established as the sum of the HAE altitude and those local differences (using look-up tables). MSL is sometimes also referred to as Height-Above-Geoid (HAG).

A position source that only provides HAG or MSL altitude (ARINC label 076) but not HAE (ARINC label 370) should not be interfaced to the ADS-B transmit unit unless the ADS-B transmit unit can properly convert HAG/MSL to HAE, using the same HAG/MSL model as the position source (typically NATO STANAG Appendix 6). This should be based on position source installation instructions that specify a deterministic method to perform conversion to HAE, and be demonstrated during ADS-B transmit unit design approval. It
is expected that the respective compliance information is supplied by the position and velocity source, and ADS-B transmit unit manufacturers through a Declaration of Design and Performance (DDP) or an equivalent document.

*Note: Horizontal position sources compliant with Class 3 equipment approved under ETSO-C145c/C146c are required to output HAE altitude. The requirement has been implemented from revision C of RTCA/DO-229 onwards.*

(c) Geometric Altitude Accuracy Quality Indicator Testing

If a qualified vertical accuracy metric is available, under nominal GNSS satellite constellation and visibility conditions, the transmitted GVA value should be a minimum of ‘one’.

**AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.090(a) Flight Deck Interface**

(a) Installations

(1) Data Transmission and Display Consistency

The data transmitted by the active ADS-B transmit unit with the data displayed to the flight crew should be consistent.

*Note: The horizontal position data displayed to the flight crew might be based on data from more than the position source than that used for ADS-B transmissions.*

(2) Single Point of Flight Crew Entry

Installations that do not provide a single point of flight crew entry for the transponder and the ADS-B transmit unit should be evaluated to ensure that dual entry of the Mode A code, SPI, and emergency status does not lead to the transmission by the active ADS-B transmit unit of inconsistent data, particularly when communicating an aircraft emergency.

(b) ADS-B Off Switch

If control is provided to enable or disable the ADS-B transmit unit, then the status of the active ADS-B transmit unit should clearly be indicated to the flight crew from their normal seated position.

The respective controls should be located such that inadvertent disabling is prevented.

**AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.090(b) Flight Deck Interface**

ADS-B device or function failures, should be indicated in amber or in accordance with the flight deck annunciation philosophy, without undue delay, i.e. a response time within the order of one second.

ADS-B device or function failures may be indicated independently of each other; however, detailed operating instructions should be developed to describe the means to interpret indications.

The ADS-B device or function failure indication should not be confused with an ACAS or Mode S system failure announcements.

In case of an ADS-B function failure, it is expected that the transponder should continue to support the ACAS, Mode A/C and Mode S functions.

The proper indications of the ADS-B Out system failures should be tested.

**AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.110 Horizontal Position and Velocity Data Refresh**

For systems with a 1 Hertz computation rate, the output of position and velocity data can vary between 0.8 seconds and 1.2 seconds.

*Note: Faster position update rates reduce the latency of the transmitted position and velocity information and are therefore encouraged.*
AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.115 and 120 Horizontal Position and Velocity Total and Uncompensated Latency

(a) Time of Applicability

With respect to the latency requirements in CS ACNS.D.ADSB.115 and CS ACNS.D.ADSB.120, the initial time of applicability (ITOA) is the time of validity of the position or velocity solution. Hence, the latency between the time of signal in space measurement (TOM) and this time of validity is excluded from the total latency budget.

The transmit time of applicability (TTOA) equals the initial time of applicability plus the amount of compensated latency (CL), as valid at the time at which the ADS-B transmit unit broadcasts the position (or velocity) information (TOT).

(b) Compliance Demonstration

Total latency (TL) is the difference between time of transmission (TOT) and initial time of applicability (ITOA). The analysis of total latency includes the maximum asynchronous delay caused by the time difference of position (or velocity) updates arriving at the ADS-B transmit unit and of transmitting the information. It is noted that for ADS-B transmit units compliant with AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.030, this asynchronous delay can be up to 1.1 second.

Uncompensated latency (UL, or more generically a latency compensation error) is the difference between total latency (TL) and amount of compensated latency (CL) thereof. Therefore, uncompensated latency determines the transmit time of applicability (TTOA). The GNSS time mark if provided to the transmit system, can be used by the ADS-B transmit unit to reduce uncompensated latency. It is possible for compensation algorithms to overcompensate for the effects of latency, also as a result of the desired attempt to account for latency external to the ADS-B transmit unit. This might lead to transmitting a position that is out in front of the actual aircraft position rather than behind the actual aircraft position. This is acceptable as long as the transmitted position is not further ahead than 0.2 s (200 ms).

The various latency related parameters are summarised in Figure 1.

![Figure 1: Latency Parameters](image)

Latency should be addressed through analysis rather than testing. Total and uncompensated latency information should be generated by the respective manufacturers of the position source, ADS-B transmit unit and any interconnecting avionics and should be included as part of the latency analysis.

The latency analysis should determine the latency applicable to each component of the ADS-B Out system. The total of all of the individual component latencies should be established as the sum of their maximum latencies.

ADS-B Out systems whereby the transmit equipment compliant with AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.030 is directly connected to a position source compliant with AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.070, should meet the total latency and uncompensated latency requirements without further analysis.
For other ADS-B Out systems, the applicant should perform a detailed position and velocity latency analysis. This includes systems where ADS-B Out system components are interfaced through a highly integrated architecture.

For detailed guidance on horizontal position and velocity source latency qualification, refer to Appendix H Part 5.

It is expected that this compliance information is supplied by the position and velocity source manufacturer through a Declaration of Design and Performance (DDP) or an equivalent document.

(c) ADS-B Quality Indicator Change Latency
The ADS-B Quality Indicator change latency requirements are driven by the maximum time to alert for the indication of a data integrity failure with respect to exceeding integrity containment bound (CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070 and related AMC guidance).
For detailed guidance on time to alert qualification, refer to Appendix H Part 5.

(d) Horizontal Position Latency Compensation
The ADS-B transmit unit may compensate for horizontal position latency incurred outside the ADS-B transmit unit (see sub-paragraph 2 above). If such is implemented, a verifiable estimation of the delay between the time of applicability of the position measurement, and the provision of that measurement to the ADS-B transmit unit data interface should be performed.
Appendix A — Background information for Mode A/C surveillance system

(c) General
This appendix provides additional references, background information, and guidance for maintenance testing, as appropriate to Mode A/C surveillance installations.

(d) Related References

(1) EASA
ETSO-C74d, Minimum Performance Standards for Airborne ATC Transponder Equipment.

(2) ICAO
(i) ICAO Annex 10, Volume IV, Aeronautical Communications (Surveillance Radar and Collision Avoidance Systems) — Amd. 85;
(iii) ICAO Document 4444-ATM/501, Procedures for Air Navigation Service, Air Traffic Management; and

(3) EUROCAE
(i) ED-43, Minimum Operational Performance Requirements for SSR Transponder and Alticoder; and
(iii) EUROCAE document 1/WG9/71 June 1972 MPS for airborne secondary surveillance radar transponder apparatus - Including Amendment Nº1 (measurement procedures)-April 1974 & Amendment Nº2-January 2000

(4) RTCA
(i) DO-144A Minimum Operational Performance Standards (MOPS) for Air traffic Control Radar Beacon Systems (ATCRBS) Airborne Equipment

(e) Background Information
Airborne surveillance system
The following diagram presents the Mode A and C transponder and its main functional interfaces.
Figure 2: Mode A/C transponder interfaces
Appendix B — Background information on Mode S ELS

(a) General
This appendix provides background information on Elementary Surveillance (ELS) useful to understand ELS airborne surveillance system defined in the CS ACNS.D.ELS and its associated AMCs.

(b) Related Material

(1) EASA
ETSO-C112d, Minimum Operational Performance Specification for SSR Mode S Transponders. (Based on EUROCAE ED-73E).

(2) ICAO
(i) ICAO Annex 10, Volume IV, Amd. 85, Aeronautical Communications (Surveillance Radar and Collision Avoidance Systems);
(ii) ICAO Document 9871 Edition 2 (transponder register formats);
(iii) ICAO Document 8168-OPS/611 Volume I ( Procedures for Air Navigation Services); and

(3) EUROCAE
(i) ED-73E Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Secondary Surveillance Radar Mode S Transponders; and

(4) RTCA
RTCA DO-181E. Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System/Mode Select (ATCRBS/Mode S) Airborne Equipment

(c) Background Information
Airborne surveillance system description
This section describes the ELS system including transponder, interfaces, and antenna.
The following diagram represents the Mode S Transponder and its main functional interfaces.
Figure 3: Mode S ELS transponder interfaces

(1) **Acquisition of aircraft position by Mode S ELS radar**

Aircraft entering the coverage of a Mode S radar is first acquired by All Call interrogations to which the transponder will reply if it is not on the ground. Therefore, it is important to test that the airborne surveillance system correctly takes into account the on-the-ground information. The on-the-ground status is also used by the ACAS systems to select aircraft which will be tracked.

During this acquisition phase the radar will acquire the Horizontal position and the 24-bit aircraft address corresponding to the aircraft technical address on the RF network.

The position and the aircraft address will be subsequently used to selectively interrogate the aircraft during the rest of its trajectory through the radar coverage.

Selective interrogations will be used:

(a) to update the horizontal position of the aircraft;

(b) to request the aircraft to not reply to the All Call interrogations specifically transmitted by the radar. This is known as lockout command;

(c) to request additional information such as Mode A code and altitude and

(d) to request further information to be downlinked from specific aircraft transponder registers such as the Aircraft Identification.

(2) **Determination of the aircraft surveillance system capability**

Ground surveillance system will need to establish the capabilities of the aircraft surveillance system to extract information only if it is available in the aircraft
surveillance system. If this is not done, it could result in a situation where the aircraft would no longer reply to the interrogations used by the radar, and, therefore, the position of the aircraft could be lost. Hence, there is a need to have correct reporting of the aircraft surveillance system capability.

This process starts by determining whether the transponder is level 2 or above by checking the CA field of the Mode S All Call replies. The CA field is encoded with either 4,5,6,7 to indicate that the transponder is a level 2.

If the transponder is a level 2 or above transponder, the second step of the process is the verification of the data-link capability provided in register 10\textsubscript{16}, the ‘Data link capability report’. It contains different information about the data link capability of the airborne surveillance system.

Elementary Surveillance System will use important information from this register, including:

(i) Aircraft Identification capability (bit 33 of register 10\textsubscript{16}) to determine the availability of the register containing the Aircraft Identification;

(ii) Surveillance Identifier code (bit 35 of register 10\textsubscript{16}) which indicates if SI protocol can be used to lockout the transponder; and

(iii) the Mode S Specific Services capability (bit 25 of register 10\textsubscript{16}) which indicates that Mode S specific services, including additional registers used for enhanced surveillance, are supported; and that the particular capability reports should be checked.

If the ‘Mode S Specific Services’ bit is set in register 10\textsubscript{16}, the availability of other registers will be checked by extracting register 17\textsubscript{16}.

(3) Extraction of Aircraft Identification using Mode S protocol

Aircraft equipped with Mode S having an aircraft identification feature transmits its Aircraft Identification as specified in Item 7 of the ICAO flight plan, or when no flight plan has been filed, the aircraft registration.

Aircraft Identification information will be obtained by Mode S radar by extracting the transponder register 20\textsubscript{16} at the track initialisation.

The Aircraft Identification is variable when it changes from one flight to another flight. It is, therefore, possible that input errors may occur. Whenever it is observed on the ground situation display that the Aircraft Identification transmitted by a Mode S-equipped aircraft is different from that expected from the aircraft, the flight crew will be requested to confirm and, if necessary, re-enter the correct Aircraft Identification.

When Aircraft Identification is modified, the transponder will indicate this change for 18s in its selective replies. This is done using the Mode S Comm-B Broadcast protocol (ICAO Annex 10 Volume IV 3.1.2.6.11.4). The Mode S ground station will extract the Comm-B Broadcast message to obtain the new value of the Aircraft Identification.

(4) Extraction of Mode A code using Mode S protocol

Ground Mode S surveillance system will extract Mode A code at track initialisation.

If the Mode A code is modified, the transponder will indicate this change for 18s in its selective replies. This is done by raising an alert bit which is set for 18s after the change. Once this alert is detected, the Mode S ground stations will extract the new Mode A code.

It is, therefore important, that the change of the Mode A code happens on the active transponder which is announcing the change for 18s.
Note: ED-73E contains additional requirement requiring the announcement of a Mode A code change when a transponder becomes active. This is not necessarily available on older Mode S transponders in which it may be necessary to follow a specified procedure on installations with no common control interface. In some instances, a ground system workaround, consisting of periodically extracting the Mode A code, has also been implemented.

(5) ACAS Resolution Advisory (RA) report extraction

When a resolution advisory has been produced, the transponder announces the presence of a ‘RA report’ for the time that the RA is active until 18s after it has ceased. The Mode S ground stations will extract the register $30_{16}$ to obtain the information.

(6) Summary of registers used for ELS

Register $10_{16}$ to obtain information on data link capability of the airborne surveillance system.

Register $17_{16}$ to obtain information on additional services available. For ELS, it is possible that register $17_{16}$ is empty (=0).

Register $20_{16}$ to obtain the Aircraft Identification.

Register $30_{16}$ to obtain the RA Report.

(7) Information on Mode S replies used to support ELS

The following Mode S reply types are used to track the aircraft and obtain additional data:

DF11: Mode S All Call replies containing the 24-bit Aircraft Address and the CA field indicating whether the transponder is level 2 or greater and whether the aircraft is on the ground or airborne. DF11 can also be spontaneously transmitted as acquisition squitters. These replies are used for aircraft acquisition.

DF4: Short Mode S reply containing Altitude information.

DF5: Short Mode S reply containing the selected Mode A code.

DF20: Long Mode S reply containing the Altitude information and the content of the transponder register requested.

DF21: Long Mode S reply containing the Mode A code and the content of the transponder register requested.
Appendix C — Background information on Mode S EHS

(a) Introduction
This appendix provides background information on Enhanced Surveillance (EHS) useful to understand EHS airborne surveillance system defined in the CS ACNS.D.EHS and its associated AMCs.

(b) Related Material
(1) EASA
ETSO-C112d, Minimum Operational Performance Specification for SSR Mode S Transponders. (Based on EUROCAE ED-73E).

(2) EUROCONTROL
(ii) Operational Hazard Assessment of Elementary and Enhanced Surveillance, Edition 1.1, EATMP Infocentre Reference: 04/04/07-01, 07.04.2004; and

(3) ICAO
(i) ICAO Annex 10, Volume IV, Amd. 85, Aeronautical Communications (Surveillance Radar and Collision Avoidance Systems);
(ii) ICAO Document 9871 Edition 2;
(iii) ICAO Document 8168-OPS/611 Volume I (Procedures for Air Navigation Services); and

(4) EUROCAE
(ii) ED-26 Minimum Performance Specification for Airborne Altitude Measurement and Coding Systems; and
(iii) ED-12C Software Considerations in Airborne Systems and Equipment Certification.

(5) RTCA

(c) Background Information
(1) Airborne surveillance system description
This section describes the EHS system including transponder, interfaces, and antenna.

The following diagram represents the Mode S Transponder, and its main functional interfaces. It is to be noted that different interfaces coming from different parts of the avionics may need to be connected to the transponder to support EHS.
(2) Registers used to support EHS capability

(i) Capability

In addition to the registers already used for ELS capability establishment, the EHS capability of the aircraft will be established using register $17_{16}$ and $1D_{16}$.

Register $17_{16}$ will indicate which other registers (e.g. $40_{16}, 50_{16}, 60_{16}$) are currently supported by the airborne surveillance system.

Ground systems could also use register $18_{16}$ to $1C_{16}$, if available, to determine which registers are installed if those register are not included in register $17_{16}$.

Register $1D_{16}$ is used to determine if Dataflash specific MSP is installed. Dataflash is an application allowing the transmission of registers to the ground only when they have changed, and, therefore, removing the need for periodic extraction of registers. Dataflash is not expected to be installed, however, some Mode S ground stations have been developed to take benefit of the dataflash application when available on aircraft.

Mode S ground stations can also use Mode S sub network version to filter old systems not correctly supporting EHS.

(ii) Basic Data

Example of a basic list of registers and parameters to use to support the declaration of registers and parameters supported by an EHS installation is provided in Table 2 below.
### Table 2 - Example of basic list of EHS registers and parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Register number</th>
<th>Assignment</th>
<th>Capability reporting in register $18_{16}$ to $1C_{16}$</th>
<th>parameters</th>
<th>EHS req</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$40_{16}$</td>
<td>Selected vertical intention</td>
<td>Reg. $19_{16}$ Bit 49</td>
<td>MCP/FCU Selected Altitude</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FMS Selected Altitude</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Barometric Pressure Setting</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MCP/FCU Mode bits</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Target altitude source bits</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$50_{16}$</td>
<td>Track and turn report</td>
<td>Reg. $19_{16}$ Bit 33</td>
<td>Roll Angle</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>True Track angle</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ground speed</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Track Angle Rate</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$60_{16}$</td>
<td>Heading and speed report</td>
<td>Reg. $19_{16}$ Bit 17</td>
<td>True Airspeed</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Magnetic Heading</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicated Airspeed</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mach</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Barometric Altitude Rate</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Inertial Vertical Velocity</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) Other data

Mode S ground stations can extract other data when available. It is, therefore, important that all data provided are verified.

The Table 3 provides more data to facilitate the declaration of other registers and parameters which may be supported and which may need to be added to the basic list provided above.

### Table 3 - Example of extended list of Transponder registers and supported parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Register number</th>
<th>Assignment</th>
<th>Capability reporting in register $18_{16}$ to $1C_{16}$</th>
<th>parameters</th>
<th>EHS req</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$0B_{16}$</td>
<td>Air/air information 1 (aircraft state)</td>
<td>Reg. $18_{16}$ Bit 46</td>
<td>True Air Speed</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>heading</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>True track angle</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ground speed</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$0C_{16}$</td>
<td>Air/air information 2 (aircraft intent)</td>
<td>Reg. $18_{16}$ Bit 45</td>
<td>Level Off Altitude</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Next Course</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register number</td>
<td>Assignment</td>
<td>Capability reporting in register 18&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; to 1C&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>parameters</td>
<td>EHS req</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Aircraft and airline registration markings</td>
<td>Reg. 18&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; Bit 24</td>
<td>Time to Next Waypoint: No, Vertical Velocity: No, Roll Angle: No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Antenna positions</td>
<td>Reg. 18&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; Bit 23</td>
<td>ICAO airline registration marking: No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Aircraft type</td>
<td>Reg. 18&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; Bit 20</td>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Next waypoint identifier</td>
<td>Reg. 19&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; Bit 48</td>
<td>Waypoint latitude: No, Waypoint Longitude: No, Waypoint Crossing Altitude: No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Next waypoint position</td>
<td>Reg. 19&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; Bit 47</td>
<td>Bearing to waypoint: No, Time To Go: No, Distance To Go: No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Next waypoint information</td>
<td>Reg. 19&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; Bit 46</td>
<td>Wind Speed and Direction: No, Average Static Pressure: No, Turbulence: No, Humidity: No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Meteorological routine air report</td>
<td>Reg. 19&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; Bit 45</td>
<td>Turbulence: No, Wind Shear: No, Microburst: No, Icing: No, Wake vortex: No, Static Air temperature: No, Average Static Pressure: No, Radio Height: No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Meteorological hazard report</td>
<td>Reg. 19&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; Bit 44</td>
<td>VHF1: No, VHF2: No, VHF3: No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>VHF channel report</td>
<td>Reg. 19&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; Bit 41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Page 93 of 161
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Register number</th>
<th>Assignment</th>
<th>Capability reporting in register $18_{16}$ to $1C_{16}$</th>
<th>parameters</th>
<th>EHS req</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$51_{16}$</td>
<td>Position report coarse</td>
<td>Reg. $19_{16}$ Bit 32</td>
<td>Latitude and Longitude and Pressure altitude</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$52_{16}$</td>
<td>Position report fine</td>
<td>Reg. $19_{16}$ Bit 31</td>
<td>Latitude fine and Longitude Fine and Pressure altitude or GNSS Height</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$53_{16}$</td>
<td>Air-referenced state vector</td>
<td>Reg. $19_{16}$ Bit 30</td>
<td>Magnetic Heading</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Indicated Airspeed</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mach Number</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>True Airspeed</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Altitude Rate</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$54_{16}$</td>
<td>Waypoint 1</td>
<td>Reg. $19_{16}$ Bit 29</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$55_{16}$</td>
<td>Waypoint 2</td>
<td>Reg. $19_{16}$ Bit 28</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$56_{16}$</td>
<td>Waypoint 3</td>
<td>Reg. $19_{16}$ Bit 17</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E3_{16}$</td>
<td>Transponder type/part number</td>
<td>Reg. $1C_{16}$ Bit 54</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E4_{16}$</td>
<td>Transponder software revision number</td>
<td>Reg. $1C_{16}$ Bit 53</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E5_{16}$</td>
<td>ACAS unit part number</td>
<td>Reg. $1C_{16}$ Bit 52</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E6_{16}$</td>
<td>ACAS unit software revision number</td>
<td>Reg. $1C_{16}$ Bit 51</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$F1_{16}$</td>
<td>Military applications</td>
<td>Reg. $1C_{16}$ Bit 40</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$F2_{16}$</td>
<td>Military applications</td>
<td>Reg. $1C_{16}$ Bit 39</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note 1:** When different fields are defined with their own status, each field will be listed in the table. In this case, it is possible to indicate the provision of the associated parameter by checking the value of the associated status bit.

**Note 2:** For more information about the content of the registers see Doc 9871 Edition 2 or above.

**Note 3:** It is recommended to provide registers $E3_{16}$, $E4_{16}$, $E5_{16}$ and $E6_{16}$.

(d) Existing Installed Transponders

A number of service bulletins have been issued to rectify some observed deficiencies and have already been addressed by the equipment manufacturers. Therefore, the installed transponders should have all published corrective transponder equipment service bulletins (SB) relating to the correct operation of the elementary functionality embodied.
Appendix D — Differences between CS ACNS.D.ELS and JAA TGL 13 Rev1

To demonstrate compliance with CS ACNS Elementary Surveillance requirements, the following additional points need to be addressed for aircraft previously compliant with JAA TGL 13 Rev1:

(a) Verification that the Aircraft identification sent in Extended Squitter messages and in the Mode S replies are identical, (See CS ACNS.D.ELS. (b) (2));

(b) Verification that the pressure altitude provided in Extended Squitter messages and in Mode S replies if the installation sends Extended Squitter are identical (See CS ACNS.D.ELS. (b) (2));

(c) Other parameters provided by the airborne surveillance system are verified as correct and are correctly indicated as available. (See CS ACNS.D.ELS. (b) (1)).

Note. The tests of the other parameters transmitted by the system allow certification of aircraft not subject to full EHS mandate but capable of transmitting some of the parameters which can be used by the operational systems.
Appendix E — Differences between CS ACNS.D.EHS and EASA AMC 20-13

To demonstrate compliance with CS ACNS Enhanced Surveillance requirements, the following additional points need to be addressed for aircraft previously compliant with EASA AMC 20-13:

(a) All transmitted parameters are correct and are correctly indicated as available (see CS ACNS.D.EHS.015 (c))

(b) Barometric pressure setting is provided (See CS ACNS.D.EHS.015 (a) (8) and (c)).
Appendix F — Example of Flight Manual Supplement for ELS/EHS

This Flight Manual is EASA approved under Approval Number P-EASA.xxxxx

Flight Manual [or POH as appropriate] Reference ______

(Company Name)

FLIGHT MANUAL SUPPLEMENT

Aircraft Model: ______

Serial Number: ___

SSR MODE S Elementary/Enhanced Surveillance

Modification Number _____________

The limitations and information contained herein either supplement or, in the case of conflict, override those in the flight manual.
GENERAL
The installed transponder system is able to respond to interrogations in Modes A, C and S and is fully compliant with the requirements of CS ACNS.D.ELS/EHS (Mode S Elementary/Enhanced Surveillance). A detailed description of the transponder operation can be found in the ___________________, P/N ___________________, Rev. ____ or subsequent revisions.

LIMITATIONS
None

EMERGENCY PROCEDURES
No change to Approved Aircraft Flight Manual

NORMAL/ ABNORMAL PROCEDURES
Normal/Abnormal transponder operating procedures are described in the ________________, P/N ___________________, Rev. ____ or subsequent revisions.
The procedure to change Aircraft Identification in flight is described in ____________________.

PERFORMANCE
No change to Approved Aircraft Flight Manual.

To be inserted in the flight manual and record sheet amended accordingly.

Page (__) of (__) Authority/DOA Approval:________________________Date:______________
Issue:________ Signature:__________________________________________
Appendix G - Example of Flight Manual Supplement for ADS-B out

(Aircraft Type) Flight Manual [or POH as appropriate] Reference (XXXX)

(Company Name)

FLIGHT MANUAL SUPPLEMENT (1) ISSUE (1)

Aircraft Model: ______

Serial Number: ___

ADS-B Out

Modification Number _____

ADDITIONAL LIMITATIONS AND INFORMATION

The limitations and information contained herein either supplement or, in the case of conflict, override those in the flight manual.
GENERAL
The installed ADS-B out system is fully compliant with the requirements of CS ACNS.D.ADSB (1090 MHz Extended Squitter ADS-B Out). A detailed description of the system operation can be found in the ________________, P/N ________________, Rev. ____ or subsequent revisions.

LIMITATIONS
None

EMERGENCY PROCEDURES
No change to Approved Aircraft Flight Manual

NORMAL/ABNORMAL PROCEDURES
Normal/Abnormal operating procedures are described in the ________________, P/N ________________, Rev. _____ or subsequent revisions.
The procedure to change Aircraft Identification in flight is described in ________________.

PERFORMANCE
No change to Approved Aircraft Flight Manual

To be inserted in the flight manual and record sheet amended accordingly.

Page (__) of (__) Authority/DOA
Approval:____________________Date:____________
Issue:_______ Signature:___________________________________
Appendix H – Guidance on 1090 MHz Extended Squitter ADS-B Out

Part 1 – ADS-B Out Data Parameters (AMC ACNS.D.ADSB.020(a))

Part 1 of this Appendix provides guidance to the aircraft integrator on the minimum ADS-B Out surveillance data requirements (Table 5 and associated Definitions).

In addition, guidance is given for the overall understanding of the ADS-B Out system, in support of equipment configuration and ADS-B Out data parameter testing, as appropriate. This includes the presentation of data encodings related to the so-called BDS registers (Table 4), as extracted from ED-102A. The content of the various BDS registers are loaded into the 56-bit ADS-B message (ME) field of the Mode S Downlink Format 17 (DF17, bits 33-88), in line with their respective transmission rates.

Table 5 below makes reference to the BDS registers that contain the various ADS-B Out data parameters. When Table 5 states Same source as for Mode S replies, reference is made to the requirement that the content of ADS-B broadcasts and Mode S replies that carry the same information need to come from the same source (CS ACNS.D.ADSB.025(b)).

The reference to the BDS registers is provided in order to facilitate a detailed understanding and traceability of ADS-B Out requirements at ADS-B transmit unit level, also in support of integration testing, as appropriate.

The relationship between the BDS registers and the ADS-B message Type Codes (first 5 bits in the 56-bit ADS-B message field) is thereby as shown in Table 4. The Type Code is used to differentiate between ADS-B message types (i.e. BDS registers). In addition, for Airborne and Surface Position Messages, the Type Code is used to encode the horizontal position integrity containment bounds (NIC). The Subtype Code is used to further differentiate between ADS-B messages of a certain type (e.g. Operational Status Message).

A number of service bulletins have been issued to rectify some observed deficiencies and have already been addressed by the equipment manufacturers. Therefore, the installed transponders should have all published corrective transponder equipment service bulletins (SB) relating to the correct operation of the ADS-B functionality embodied.
### Table 4: BDS Register Overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BDS Register</th>
<th>Type Code(s)</th>
<th>Subtype Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>05&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; – Airborne Position Message</td>
<td>0, 9-18, 20-22</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; – Surface Position Message</td>
<td>0, 5-8</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; - Aircraft Identification and Category Message</td>
<td>1, 2, 3 or 4</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; - Airborne Velocity Message</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>1+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; - Airborne Velocity Message</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velocity over Ground (Normal/Supersonic)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; - Aircraft Status Message</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; - Aircraft Status Message</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Status and Mode A Code</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; - Aircraft Status Message</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACAS RA Broadcast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; - Target State and Status Message</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; – Aircraft Operational Status Message</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; – Aircraft Operational Status Message</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>While Airborne</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; – Aircraft Operational Status Message</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On the Surface</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Although BDS registers 07<sub>16</sub> and 0A<sub>16</sub> are not conveying ADS-B data items their implementation is needed to complement the ADS-B protocol.*
Table 5: Minimum ADS-B Out Surveillance Data Transmission Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Requirements</th>
<th>BDS Register</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Aircraft Identification</td>
<td>See Definition 1</td>
<td>08&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Same source as for Mode S replies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Mode A Code</td>
<td>See Definition 2</td>
<td>61&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Same source as for Mode S replies Broadcast suppressed for conspicuity code ‘1000’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ICAO 24-bit aircraft address</td>
<td>Transmit ICAO 24-bit aircraft address</td>
<td>All BDS (AA field of DF17, bits 9-32)</td>
<td>Unique ICAO 24 bit aircraft address needs to be assigned by the responsible authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4a</td>
<td>Airborne Horizontal Position – Latitude and Longitude</td>
<td>See Definition 3</td>
<td>05&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4b</td>
<td>Airborne Horizontal Position Quality: NIC</td>
<td>See Definition 4 and 5</td>
<td>05&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; Type Codes</td>
<td>Incl. NIC Supplements A (65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;) and B (05&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4c</td>
<td>Horizontal Position Quality: NACp</td>
<td>See Definition 4 and 6</td>
<td>62&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; and 65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4d</td>
<td>Horizontal Position Quality: SIL</td>
<td>See Definition 4 and 7</td>
<td>62&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; and 65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Incl. SIL Supplement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4e</td>
<td>Horizontal Position Quality: SDA</td>
<td>See Definition 4 and 8</td>
<td>65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Pressure Altitude</td>
<td>See Definition 9</td>
<td>05&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Same source as for Mode S replies Data associated with ‘NICbaro’ integrity indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Special Position Identification (SPI)</td>
<td>Setting as per ED-73E §2.5</td>
<td>05&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Same source as for Mode S replies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7a</td>
<td>Emergency Status</td>
<td>See Definition 10</td>
<td>61&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; (subtype 1)</td>
<td>Same source as for Mode S replies (where defined for SSR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7b</td>
<td>Emergency Indication</td>
<td>Setting as per ED-73E §2.5</td>
<td>05&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Same source as for Mode S replies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1090 ES Version Number</td>
<td>To be set to 2 for ED-102A/DO-260B systems.</td>
<td>65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Value is fixed at the time the ADS-B transmit unit is manufactured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9a</td>
<td>Airborne</td>
<td>See Definition 11</td>
<td>09&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Same source as for Mode S replies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Requirements</td>
<td>BDS Register</td>
<td>Remarks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal Velocity (Ground Speed) - east/west and north/south</td>
<td>See Definition 12</td>
<td>09&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; (airborne) and 65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; (subtype 1, surface)</td>
<td>for SSR EHS replies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9b</td>
<td>Horizontal Velocity Quality: NACv</td>
<td>See Definition 12</td>
<td>09&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; (airborne) and 65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; (subtype 1, surface)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Emitter Category</td>
<td>See Definition 13</td>
<td>08&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Vertical Rate</td>
<td>See Definition 14</td>
<td>09&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; (subtypes 1and2)</td>
<td>Selected source is indicated in 09&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; source indication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12a</td>
<td>Surface Horizontal Position – Latitude and Longitude</td>
<td>Source see AMC ACNS.D.ADSB.070 See Definition 3</td>
<td>06&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Quality indicators NACp, SIL, SDA: same encodings as for airborne horizontal position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12b</td>
<td>Surface Horizontal Position Quality: NIC</td>
<td>See Definition 15</td>
<td>06&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; Type Codes</td>
<td>Incl. NIC Suplements A and C (both 65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Heading/Ground Track</td>
<td>See Definition 16</td>
<td>06&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>Heading preferred source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Movement (surface ground speed)</td>
<td>See Definitions 11 and 12</td>
<td>06&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>NACv: same as for airborne ground velocity (see 9b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Length/width of Aircraft</td>
<td>See Definition 17</td>
<td>65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; (subtype 1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>GPS Antenna Offset</td>
<td>See Definition 18</td>
<td>65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; (subtype 1)</td>
<td>Lateral and longitudinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17a</td>
<td>Geometric Altitude</td>
<td>See Definition 19</td>
<td>09&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; (05&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;)</td>
<td>In 09&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; reported as difference from Pressure Altitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17b</td>
<td>Geometric Altitude Quality: GVA</td>
<td>See Definition 20</td>
<td>65&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; (subtype 0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Definition 1: Aircraft Identification Data Sources

Aircraft Identification is provided to the ADS-B transmit unit so that the information is identical to the filed ICAO flight plan. This information may be provided from, amongst others:

- A flight management system;
- A pilot control panel;

For aircraft, which always operate with the same aircraft identification (e.g. using registration as the aircraft identification), it may be programmed into equipment at installation.

In case no ICAO flight plan is filed, the Aircraft Registration is provided to the ADS-B transmit unit.

Definition 2: Mode A Code

Refer to AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.015 for general guidance.

When the ADS-B transmit unit receives a Mode A Code containing the Mode S conspicuity code (1000), the broadcast of Mode A code information is stopped.

*Note: The broadcast of the Mode A Code is provided as a transitional feature, e.g. to aid operation of legacy ATC automation systems that use Mode A Code for Flight Plan correlation. Entry of the Mode A Code of 1000 will disable the transmission of the Mode A Code, and, hence, reduce the overall 1090 ES transmission rate.*

Definition 3: Horizontal Position Information

The Mode S Extended Squitter position format uses the Compact Position Reporting (CPR) algorithm to encode latitude and longitude efficiently into messages. The resulting messages are compact in the sense that several higher order bits which are normally constant for long periods of time, are not transmitted in every message.

The CPR technique enables a receiving system to unambiguously determine the location of the aircraft, and, hence, reconstruct the original information provided by the source. If required for integration testing purposes, detailed guidance on the CPR algorithm is provided in ED-102A/DO-260B.

A horizontal position data source provides position information for both the airborne and surface horizontal position data formats (i.e. registers 0516 or 0616, respectively), accordingly encoded by the ADS-B transmit unit depending on the aircraft airborne/surface state.

Definition 4: Horizontal Position Quality – NIC and NAcP

The encoding of the NIC and NAcP horizontal position quality indicators should be directly derived from the corresponding integrity and accuracy information as being reported by the selected horizontal position source (refer also to CS ACNS.D.ADSB.025(c)).

In case a measurement integrity failure has been indicated by the selected horizontal position source (e.g. bit 11 of ARINC label 130 for ARINC 743A compliant sources), both the NIC and NAcP quality indicators will be set to invalid (zero), regardless of the indicated integrity containment bound (e.g. HPL).

Definition 5: Airborne NIC Value

NIC is reported so that surveillance applications, such as by ATC or other aircraft, may determine whether the reported horizontal position has an acceptable level of measurement integrity for the intended use. (Note that the NIC parameter is closely associated with the SIL quality metric.)

The NIC (and SIL) values are associated with a possible failure condition of the position measurement function and the detection thereof. For most ADS-B applications, the NIC (and SIL) values are the key horizontal position quality metrics on which the horizontal position data
is determined to be of sufficient quality for its intended use. The NIC value is encoded on the respective horizontal position integrity containment radius as provided by the source.

The NIC values, including the NIC Supplements values, are encoded for airborne position messages as follows (Rc is the horizontal position integrity containment bound, typically HPL/HIL for GNSS systems):

**Table 6: Airborne NIC Encoding**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NIC Value</th>
<th>Radius of Containment (Rc)</th>
<th>Airborne Position TYPE Code</th>
<th>NIC Supplement Codes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Rc unknown or Rc ≥ 37 040 m (20 NM)</td>
<td>0, 18 or 22</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Rc &lt; 37 040 m (20 NM)</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Rc &lt; 14 816 m (8 NM)</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Rc &lt; 7 408 m (4 NM)</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Rc &lt; 3 704 m (2 NM)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Rc &lt; 1 852 m (1 NM)</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Rc &lt; 1 111.2 m (0.6 NM)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rc &lt; 926 m (0.5 NM)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rc &lt; 555.6 m (0.3 NM)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Rc &lt; 370.4 m (0.2 NM)</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Rc &lt; 185.2 m (0.1 NM)</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Rc &lt; 75 m</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Rc &lt; 25 m</td>
<td>10 or 21</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Rc &lt; 7.5 m</td>
<td>9 or 20</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: The minimum NIC values required for the ADS-B-RAD application can be found in Table 20, in Part 3 of Appendix A. They are met through the horizontal position source requirements defined in CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070.*

**Definition 6: NACp**

NACp specifies the 95 % radial accuracy of the aircraft’s horizontal position information (latitude and longitude) derived from the position source’s accuracy output, typically the HFOM metric from GNSS based sources.
Whereas the NIC value is associated with a possible failure condition of the position measurement function, the NACp value describes the nominal performance of the measurement function in terms of horizontal position accuracy as provided by the source. The NACp value is encoded as follows:

**Table 7: NACp Encoding**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coding</th>
<th>95% Horizontal Accuracy Bound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>EPU ≥ 18 520 m (≥10 NM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>EPU &lt; 18 520 m (10 NM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>EPU &lt; 7 408 m (4 NM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>EPU &lt; 3 704 m (2 NM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>EPU &lt; 1 852 m (1 NM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>EPU &lt; 926 m (0.5 NM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>EPU &lt; 555.6 m (0.3 NM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>EPU &lt; 185.2 m (0.1 NM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>EPU &lt; 92.6 m (0.05 NM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>EPU &lt; 30 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>EPU &lt; 10 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>EPU &lt; 3 m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: The minimum NACp values required for the ADS-B-RAD application can be found in Table 20, in Part 3 of Appendix A. This value is met through the horizontal position source requirements defined in CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070.*

The NACp encoding is the same for airborne position messages and surface position messages.

**Definition 7: SIL**

The encoding of the horizontal position source integrity level (SIL) is based on the probability of the reported horizontal position exceeding the radius of containment defined by the NIC, without alerting, assuming no avionics faults. The SIL value is set as follows:

**Table 8: SIL Encoding**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIL value</th>
<th>Probability of Exceeding the NIC Containment Radius</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Unknown or &gt; 1 × 10⁻³ per flight hour or per sample</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>≤ 1 × 10⁻³ per flight hour or per sample</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>≤ 1 × 10⁻⁵ per flight hour or per sample</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>≤ 1 × 10⁻⁷ per flight hour or per sample</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note: The minimum SIL value required for the ADS-B-RAD application can be found in Table 20, in Part 3 of Appendix A. This value is met through the horizontal position source requirements defined in CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070 (see also related AMC guidance).

Whereas SIL assumes that there are no system integrity failures, the SIL should consider the effects of a faulted signal-in-space.

For horizontal position sources compliant with CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070, the probability of exceeding a NIC radius of containment without alerting is based on a per hour rate. Hence, the SIL Supplement should be set to ‘zero’. If based on per sample, the SIL Supplement would be set to ‘one’.

The SIL encoding is the same for airborne position messages and surface position messages.

**Definition 8: SDA**

The encoding of the system design assurance level (SDA) is based on the failure condition that the entire ADS-B Out system, with respect to the horizontal position data and associated quality indicators, is designed to support.

The SDA value is encoded as follows:

**Table 9: SDA Encoding**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SDA value</th>
<th>Software &amp; Hardware Design Assurance Level (see Note 1)</th>
<th>Corresponding System Integrity Level (see Note 2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>&gt; 1X10^{-3} per flight hour or unknown (No Safety Effect)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>≤ 1X10^{-3} per flight hour (Probable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>≤ 1X10^{-5} per flight hour (Remote)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>≤ 1X10^{-7} per flight hour (Extremely Remote)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note 1:** Software Design Assurance per EUROCAE ED-12C (RTCA DO-178C). Airborne Electronic Hardware Design Assurance per EUROCAE ED-80 (RTCA DO-254).

**Note 2:** In line with the ADS-B-RAD requirements, the minimum value required for the horizontal position source is SDA=2 ()

The SDA encoding is the same for airborne position messages and surface position messages.
Definition 9: Pressure Altitude Data Sources

Refer to AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.015 for guidance.

The ADS-B NICbaro quality indicator is encoded as follows:

Table 10: NICbaro Encoding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coding</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>The barometric altitude is based on a Gillham coded input that has not been cross-checked against another source of pressure altitude.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The barometric altitude is either based on a Gillham code input that has been cross-checked against another source of pressure altitude and verified as being consistent, or is based on a non-Gillham coded source.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Definition 10: Emergency Status

The provision of the Emergency Status values that do not have a corresponding Mode A Code value (see CS ACNS.D.ELS.) denoting the other emergency conditions defined in 611₆, is optional. This applies to the decimal values 2, 3, 6 and 7 in Table 11.

Table 11: Emergency Status Encoding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coding</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Binary)</td>
<td>(Decimal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>001</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Definition 11: Horizontal Velocity (Ground Velocity)

The horizontal velocity provides the rate at which an aircraft changes its horizontal position with a clearly stated direction.

Velocity data sources provide ground velocity vector information for both the airborne and surface velocity data transmit formats, allowing for the transmission of east/west and north/south velocity information (09₁₆), or velocity scalar (06₁₆, movement) and possibly ground track information² (06₁₆), respectively.

2. Refer to Definition 16.
In case of a failure of the provision of ground velocity data, the ADS-B transmit unit will broadcast airspeed (and heading) information instead (using subtypes 3 or 4 of register 09).

**Definition 12:** Horizontal Velocity Quality Indicator NACv

The NACv is an estimate of the accuracy of the horizontal geometric velocity data.

The NACv value is encoded as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coding (Binary)</th>
<th>Coding (Decimal)</th>
<th>Horizontal Velocity Error (95%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Unknown or ≥ 10 m/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>001</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>&lt; 10 m/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>&lt; 3 m/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>&lt; 1 m/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>&lt; 0.3 m/s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The NACv encoding is the same for airborne position messages and surface position messages.

**Definition 13:** Emitter Category

Emitter Category settings describe the size and performance of an aircraft, primarily expressed with respect to its maximum take-off weight.

The Emitter Category value is encoded as follows:
### Table 13: Emitter Category Encoding

#### ADS-B Emitter Category Set “A”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coding</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>No ADS-B Emitter Category Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Light (&lt; 7 031 kg (15 500 lbs))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Small (7 031 to 34 019 kg (15 500 to 75 000 lbs))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Large (34 019 to 136 078 kg (75 000 to 300 000 lbs))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>High-Vortex Large (aircraft such as B-757)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Heavy (&gt; 136 078 kg (300 000 lbs))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>High Performance (&gt; 49 m/s² (5g) acceleration and &gt; 205 m/s (400 knots))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Rotorcraft</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### ADS-B Emitter Category Set “B”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coding</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>No ADS-B Emitter Category Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Glider / Sailplane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Lighter-than-Air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Parachutist / Skydiver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ultralight / hang-glider / paraglider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Unmanned Aerial Vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Space / Trans-atmospheric vehicle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### ADS-B Emitter Category Set “C”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coding</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>No ADS-B Emitter Category Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Surface Vehicle - Emergency Vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Surface Vehicle - Service Vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Point Obstacle (includes tethered balloons)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Cluster Obstacle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Line Obstacle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 - 7</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### ADS-B Emitter Category Set “D”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coding</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>No ADS-B Emitter Category Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 - 7</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ADS-B Emitter Category Sets A, B, C or D are identified by the Message Format TYPE Codes 4, 3, 2, and 1 respectively.

**Note 1:** A coding of ‘0’ within an Emitter Category Set is not allowed.

**Note 2:** The Emitter Category codes 1 to 5 in category set A are intended to advise other aircraft of the transmitting aircraft’s wake vortex characteristics, and not necessarily the transmitting aircraft’s actual maximum take-off weight. In case of doubt, the next higher aircraft category code should be used.
Definition 14: Vertical Rate
Vertical Rate is either the barometric or geometric rate at which the aircraft is climbing or descending, measured in feet per minute. The vertical rate is typically generated by an air data computer or GNSS position source, or equipment which blends barometric vertical rate with inertial vertical rate and/or GNSS vertical rate.

As the geometric vertical rate can be readily derived from the ADS-B Out position source, it is classified as a minimum requirement rather than an (effectively Mode S Enhanced Surveillance) conditional requirement.

Definition 15: Surface NIC Value
The Surface NIC value, including the NIC Supplement A and C values, is encoded as follows:

Table 14: Surface NIC Encoding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NIC Value</th>
<th>Radius of Containment (R_c)</th>
<th>Surface Position TYPE Code</th>
<th>NIC Supplement Codes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Surface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NIC Supplement Codes A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>R_c unknown</td>
<td>0, 8</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>R_c &lt; 1 111.2 m (0.6 NM)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>R_c &lt; 370.4 m (0.2 NM)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>R_c &lt; 185.2 m (0.1 NM)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>R_c &lt; 75 m</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>R_c &lt; 25 m</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>R_c &lt; 7.5 m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Definition 16: Surface Heading/Ground Track
Aircraft Heading indicates the direction in which the nose of the aircraft is pointing. It should be used as the primary source and be expressed (in ME bit 54 in $65_{16}$) as either true north (‘0’, preferred) or magnetic north (‘1’).

If an approved heading source is not available (or failed during operation), the Ground Track angle information from the selected ground velocity data source will be used instead by the ADS-B transmit unit for the determination of the direction of the horizontal velocity vector.

If the position source ground track is used and inaccurate below a certain ground speed, and the position source does not inhibit output of the ground track at these slower speeds, the installer should ensure that the ADS-B transmit unit has the capability to invalidate the ground track when the GNSS ground speed falls below a threshold specified by the position source manufacturer (e.g. 3.6 m/s (7 knots)).
**Definition 17: Aircraft Length and Width**

Aircraft Length and Width settings describe the aircraft dimensions by the width and length of a rectangle that is aligned parallel to the aircraft’s heading. The aircraft’s length is to be measured along its axis of symmetry (i.e. from nose to tail). The aircraft’s width is to be measured from wing-tip to wing-tip.

The Aircraft Length and Width values are encoded as shown in Table 15 to be less than or equal to a respective upper bound length and width as expressed in the two right-side columns. The Length and Width Codes are based on a combined encoding of the actual length and width whereby the largest respective upper bound prevails. If the Aircraft or Vehicle is longer than 85 meters, or wider than 90 meters, then decimal Aircraft/Vehicle Length/Width Code 15 is used.

### Table 15: Aircraft Length/Width Encoding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘ME’ Bit 21</td>
<td>‘ME’ Bit 22</td>
<td>‘ME’ Bit 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: a powered glider with an overall length of 24 meters and wingspan of 50 meters would, normally, have a length code of ‘001’. However, since the wingspan exceeds 34 meters, it does not qualify for either Width subcategory of length category ‘001’. In line with its actual width, such an aircraft would be assigned a length code of ‘100’ and width code of ‘1’, meaning length less than 55 meters and width less than 52 meters.
**Definition 18:** GPS Antenna Offset (lateral and longitudinal)

GPS Antenna Offset information provides the position offset of the GNSS antenna used for the provision of horizontal position information.

Both a lateral distance of the GPS Antenna (from the longitudinal axis of the aircraft) and a longitudinal distance of the GPS Antenna (from the nose of the aircraft) are provided.

The accuracy of the information should be better than 2 meters, consistent with the data resolution.

The lateral and longitudinal GPS Antenna Offset values are encoded as follows:

**Table 16: Lateral Axis GPS Antenna Offset Encoding**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>‘ME’ Bit (Message Bit)</th>
<th>Upper Bound of the GPS Antenna Offset Along Lateral (Pitch) Axis Left or Right of Longitudinal (Roll) Axis</th>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>(meters)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33 (65)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>NO DATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 = left</td>
<td>0 0</td>
<td>LEFT</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 = right</td>
<td>0 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 0</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34 (66)</td>
<td></td>
<td>RIGHT</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0 0</td>
<td>RIGHT</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 0</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 (67)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Right</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 = left</td>
<td>0 0</td>
<td>RIGHT</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 = right</td>
<td>0 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 0</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Supplementary Notes**

Maximum distance left or right of aircraft longitudinal (roll) axis is 6 meters or 19.685 feet. If the distance is greater than 6 meters, then the encoding should be set to 6 meters.

The No Data case is indicated by encoding of 000 as above, while the ZERO offset case is represented by encoding of 100 as above.

The rounding should be performed to half of the resolution of the GPS antenna offset information, i.e. +/- 1 meter.
Table 17: Longitudinal Axis GPS Antenna Offset Encoding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>‘ME’ Bit (Message Bit)</th>
<th>Upper Bound of the GPS Antenna Offset Along Longitudinal (Roll) Axis Aft From Aircraft Nose (meters)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bit 4</td>
<td>Bit 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Supplementary Notes:**

*If the distance is greater than 60 meters, the encoding should be set to 60 meters.*

*Position Offset Applied by the Sensor applies to future cases where the antenna offset is compensated by the horizontal position source to the centre of the rectangle describing the aircraft’s length and width (refer to Definition 17).*

*The encoding of the values from decimal ‘2’ (only bit 1 one set to ‘1’) to ‘31’ (all five bits set to ‘1’) is as follows: encoded binary value = offset [m] / 2 + 1 (e.g. an offset of 4 meters leads to a binary value of (4/2 + 1 = 3), i.e. Bits 0-1 equal ‘1’ and Bits 2-4 equal ‘0’).*

**Definition 19:** Geometric Altitude

The geometric altitude is a measure of the aircraft’s height above a geometric reference and is provided by a GNSS-based position source.

Both within 05\(_{16}\) and 09\(_{16}\), Geometric Altitude is provided as height above ellipsoid (HAE) in accordance with the WGS 84 coordinate system (AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.085(b)).
**Definition 20:** Geometric altitude quality indicator information (GVA)

The GVA parameter expresses the actual performance of the geometric altitude data source as valid at the time of applicability of the measurement.

The GVA value is encoded as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GVA Encoding (decimal)</th>
<th>95% Accuracy (meters)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Unknown or &gt; 150 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>≤ 150 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&lt; 45 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 18: GVA Encoding*
Appendix H

Part 2 – ADS-B Out Surveillance Data Parameters (AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.020(b))

Table 19 below makes reference to the BDS register(s) that contain the various ADS-B Out surveillance data parameters. When Table 19 states Same source as for Mode S replies, reference is made to the requirement that the content of ADS-B broadcasts and Mode S replies that carry the same information and need to come from the same source (CS ACNS.D.ADSB.025(b)).

Guidance on the content of the various BDS registers and their relationship with the ADS-B message Type Codes is provided in Table 4 in part 1 of Appendix A.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Requirements</th>
<th>BDS Register</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Selected Altitude</td>
<td>See Definition 21.</td>
<td>$62_{16}$</td>
<td>Same source as for Mode S replies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Barometric Pressure Setting</td>
<td></td>
<td>$62_{16}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3a</td>
<td>ACAS Operational</td>
<td>See Definition 22.</td>
<td>$62_{16}$ and $65_{16}$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3b</td>
<td>Resolution Advisory (RA)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$61_{16}$ (subtype 2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Definition 21:** Selected Altitude/Barometric Pressure Setting

Refer to AMC1 ACNS.D.EHS. (c) (1 and (c) (3) for detailed guidance.

**Definition 22:** ACAS Operational /Resolution Advisory (RA)

Refer to AMC1 ACNS.D.ELS.015 (f) for detailed guidance.

The data is populated from ACAS II systems if installed on the aircraft. Both parameters should be preset to ‘zero’ if an ACAS II system is not installed (refer to ADS-B transmit unit manufacturer instructions).
Table 20 provides a summary of the minimum horizontal position data requirements as specified in the defining ADS-B-RAD Safety and Performance Requirements/Interoperability document (ED-161).

### Table 20: Minimum Horizontal Position and Velocity Data Quality Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quality Parameter</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Position Accuracy (NACp)</td>
<td>( NACp \leq 185.2 , \text{m (0.1NM)} ) (i.e. ( NACp \geq 7 )) for both 3 NM and 5 NM separation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position Integrity Containment Radius (NIC)</td>
<td>3 NM Sep: ( NIC \leq 111.2 , \text{m (0.6 NM)} ) (i.e. ( NIC \geq 6 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 NM Sep: ( NIC \leq 1852 , \text{m (1 NM)} ) (i.e. ( NIC \geq 5 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Integrity Level (SIL)</td>
<td>( \text{SIL} = 3: 10^{-7}/\text{flight-hour} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Design Assurance (SDA)</td>
<td>( \text{SDA} = 2: 10^{-5}/\text{flight-hour} - \text{allowable probability level REMOTE (MAJOR failure condition, LEVEL C software and design assurance level)} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velocity Accuracy (NACv)</td>
<td>( NACv \leq 10 , \text{m/s (i.e. NACv} \geq 1) )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note 1:** The requirement of \( NACp \leq 0.1 \text{NM} \) in support of 3NM separation is based on the arguments produced in Annex B to ED-161 (ADS-B-RAD Safety and Performance Requirements/Interoperability Requirements Document).

**Note 2:** The SDA encoding of '2' (10-5/flight-hour) applies to individual components of the ADS-B Out system, i.e. 10-5/flight-hour for the ADS-B transmit unit and 10-5/flight-hour for the horizontal position and velocity source.

**Note 3:** ADS-B transmit units interfaced with a GNSS position source that is compliant with CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070 (and the related AMC guidance) should preset the SIL Supplement to ‘zero’.

**Note 4:** If set as fixed value, NACv should be always ‘one’. For quality indications that are dynamically provided by the velocity source, NACv should be ‘one’ or ‘two’. There is currently no established guidance on establishing a NACv performance of ‘three’ or better.

This should be verified through appropriate tests, as follows. With respect to NIC and NACp testing, the ADS-B Out system installer should check for satellite shielding and masking effects if the stated performance is not achieved.

(a) Airborne & Surface NIC:

During testing under nominal GNSS satellite constellation and visibility conditions, the transmitted NIC value should be a minimum of ‘six’.

---

**Appendix H**

**Part 3 – ADS-B Out Minimum Horizontal Position and Velocity Data Requirements**

Table 20 provides a summary of the minimum horizontal position data requirements as specified in the defining ADS-B-RAD Safety and Performance Requirements/Interoperability document (ED-161).
(b) **NACP:**

During testing under nominal GNSS satellite constellation and visibility conditions, the transmitted NACP value should be a minimum of ‘eight’.

In order to validate the correctness of the transmitted horizontal position, the aircraft should be positioned on a known location.

(c) **SIL:**

SIL is typically a static (unchanging) value and may be set at the time of installation if a single type of position source is integrated with the ADS-B transmit unit. SIL should be set based on design data from the position source equipment manufacturer. Installations which derive SIL from GNSS position sources compliant with CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070 should set the SIL to ‘three’.

ADS-B transmit units interfaced with a GNSS position source that is compliant with CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070 (and the related AMC guidance) should pre-set the SIL Supplement to ‘zero’.

(d) **NACV:**

If set as fixed value, NACV should be always ‘one’. For quality indications that are dynamically provided by the velocity source, NACV should be ‘one’ or ‘two’.

It is noted that there is currently no established guidance on establishing a NACV performance of ‘three’ or better.
Appendix H.

Part 4 – ADS-B Out Integrity and Continuity Requirements

CS ACNS.D.ADSB.100 and CS ACNS.D.ADSB.105 summarise, per data parameter, the integrity and continuity probability levels applicable to the ADS-B Out system.

In the first place, the ADS-B Out System installed in the aircraft needs to deliver data that satisfy the ADS-B-RAD airborne domain system safety and performance requirements in line with Section 3.4 of the ADS-B-RAD Safety and Performance Requirements/Interoperability standard ED-161.

As, for the purpose of framing the ADS-B-RAD operational safety assessment, the ADS-B-RAD airborne domain only comprises the horizontal position data source and the ADS-B transmit unit, including the interconnecting avionics, the data sources providing surveillance information other than horizontal position and velocity are assumed to operate as within today’s SSR environment. Hence, in line with CS ACNS.D.ADSB.080, the related Mode S Elementary and Enhanced Surveillance requirements apply.

It is noted that the respective Mode S Elementary and Enhanced Surveillance requirements have to be understood within their given context, in particular taking into account applicable procedural mitigation means (e.g. as currently performed by means of the ICAO required controller-pilot verification procedure for pressure altitude reporting).

The ADS-B Out data parameters other than the ones addressed in the preceding paragraphs, need to satisfy comparable ADS-B-RAD requirements.

The specified integrity levels are required to adequately protect against the corruption of ADS-B Out surveillance data causing false or misleading information to be transmitted.

Although the direct effects to an aircraft of an ADS-B Out failure may be minor, the ADS-B Out information will be used by ATC and other ADS-B equipped aircraft, thus provisions that would allow for a reduction in failure probabilities and design assurance level, do not apply to the ADS-B Out system.
Appendix H

Part 5 – GNSS Position and Velocity Source Qualification

This part 5 of Appendix H provides guidance to GNSS equipment manufacturers on how to establish a qualification for these ADS-B specific requirements, i.e. beyond the demonstration of compliance to ETSO requirements. In the following, as appropriate, reference is made to the respective:

- ETSO material: ETSO-C129a (JTSO-C129a), ETSO-C196a, ETSO-C145()/146()
- EUROCAE/RTCA MOPS material: ED-72A, DO-208, DO-229D, DO-316 as well as DO-235B; and
- FAA AC material (AC 20-138C).

Note: ETSO-C145 refers to RTCA DO-229A, ETSO-C146 refers to RTCA DO-229B, ETSO-C145c/146c refers to RTCA DO-229D, and ETSO-C145()/146() refers to any of those revisions.

In addition to the ETSO minimum requirements, the requirements of this part need to be demonstrated unless this has been demonstrated as a declared non-ETSO function. It is expected that the required compliance demonstration is supplied by the position and velocity source manufacturer through a Declaration of Design and Performance (DDP), or an equivalent document.

(a) Horizontal Position Integrity (HPL)

**Horizontal Position Integrity — AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.070(a).1.2(a)**

**Applicability:** ETSO-C129a (JTSO-C129a)

GNSS equipment manufacturers should provide substantiation data showing that the equipment outputs latitude and longitude information that is referenced to the WGS-84 coordinate system.

GNSS equipment manufacturers should provide substantiation data showing that the equipment outputs a $10^{-7}$/hr Horizontal Protection Limit (HPL, or equivalent) based on the RAIM algorithm meeting the ETSO-C129a (JTSO-C129a) Class A1, A2, B1, B2, C1, or C2 RAIM requirements.

**Applicability:** ETSO-C145()/146()

SBAS equipment certified under any revision of ETSO-C145 or ETSO-C146 is required to have several modes of operation depending on the availability of augmentation. For example, when operating in an augmented mode intended for LPV approach guidance, the position source may determine HPL based on a lateral error versus a horizontal error and an exposure time based on the duration of the approach versus flight hour (refer to Appendix J to RTCA DO229D for details).

If the position source outputs the HPL on lateral error and approach exposure time, it is possible that the ADS-B transmit function would need to inflate the HPL by 3% in approach modes to ensure the integrity is appropriately bounded.

GNSS equipment manufacturers should provide information data to determine if the integrity output needs to be scaled (i.e., by applying an inflation factor). The same considerations apply to GBAS differentially-corrected position sources when in approach mode.
Integrity Fault – Time to Alert — AMC ACNS.D.ADSB.070(a).1.2(b)

**Applicability:** ETSO-C129a (JTSO-C129a)

For the horizontal position sources compliant with AMC ACNS.D.ADSB.070, it should be demonstrated, that a non-isolated GNSS satellite fault detected by the position source is properly passed to the ADS-B transmit unit within the allowable time to alert of 10 seconds, at any time.

With reference to the mode dependent time to alert in Table 3-5 of EUROCAE ED-72A section 3.2.1 (Table 2-1 of RTCA DO-208 Section 2.2.1.13.1), GNSS equipment manufacturers should provide information describing the equipment integrity fault output latency, along with interface instructions and/or any limitations for meeting the 10-second latency requirement of AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.070(a).1.2(b).

*Note 1:* The latency of reporting nominal ADS-B Quality Indicator changes, such as in response to changing GNSS satellite constellations or due to switching between position sources, is bounded by CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070(a).1.2(c) as well.

*Note 2:* ED-72A allows a provision to extend the Time to Alarm up to 30 seconds during en route phases of flight while for terminal and Non-Precision Approach the 10-second limit is applicable. For ADS-B Out, a time to alert of 10 seconds applies to any phases of flight.
Mode Output — AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.070(a).1.3

**Applicability:** ETSO-C129a (JTSO-C129a), ETSO-C196a, ETSO-C145()/146()

GNSS equipment manufacturers should provide instructions describing any equipment modes affecting the interpretation of horizontal position integrity output and how the position source outputs the mode indication.

As the minimum horizontal position integrity containment bound provided by non-augmented, as well as some specific augmented GNSS source, equipment is limited to 0.1 NM by design, the GNSS equipment manufacturer should present substantiation data whether the HPL output is limited or not, and provide proper instructions for the ADS-B Out system integration. If the GNSS source equipment does not limit the HPL, although it should do so by design, the ADS-B transmit unit limits the encoded NIC value to be equal to or less than ‘eight’.

(b) **Horizontal Position Accuracy (HFOM) — AMC ACNS.D.ADSB.070(a).1.2(d)**

**Applicability:** ETSO-C129a, ETSO-C145, and ETSO-C146

Note 1: Compliance with RTCA/DO-229D is required by ETSO-C145c-C146c. ETSO-C145/-C146 may be acceptable by applications of a positive deviation.

Note 2: If in the following, reference is made in the qualification tests described in DO-229D, the equivalent material in DO-316 applies as well.

GNSS equipment manufacturers should provide substantiation data showing the equipment computes and outputs HFOM. The following criteria for an acceptable horizontal position output and its associated HFOM accuracy metric are recommended to be applied:

1. The horizontal position output should be calculated using the general least squares position solution of DO-229D Appendix J.1 (or any mathematically equivalent linear combination of range measurements). There is no restriction on the choice of the weight matrix W including non-weighted solutions; the use of the LNAV/VNAV, LP, LPV approach weight (wᵢ = 1/σᵢ²) is optional.

2. The horizontal position accuracy should be tested using the procedure of DO-229D Section 2.5.8.3. The σᵢ² used to compute the variance dᵢ_major should be greater or equal to the ones listed in DO-229D Appendix J when the equipment uses SBAS-provided integrity and greater or equal to the ones listed as an acceptable means for FDE-provided integrity in section DO-229D 2.1.2.2.2.2 when the equipment does not use SBAS-provided integrity. A fixed sigma of 33.3 m is considered a sufficient over-bound when using FDE-provided integrity. For equipment that uses SBAS-provided integrity, testing only in the highest mode attainable for its declared Operational Class as specified in the test itself is acceptable.

3. The accuracy metric should be greater or equal to 1.96 sqrt(dₑast² + dₙorth²) or 2.45 d_major where d_major, dₑast, and dₙorth are computed using the same σᵢ employed during the horizontal accuracy test procedure. General certification substantiation data that the equipment meets this requirement is sufficient; no specific test is required.

Note 1: The scaling factors for the horizontal position accuracy metrics were rounded to 2 decimal places; there is no intention to prohibit the use of a more accurate number.

Note 2: The horizontal position accuracy metrics listed above are the standard metrics used to provide a minimum of 95 % containment (varying from 95 % to approximately 98.5 % for the horizontal metrics) under the assumption that a Gaussian distribution with a sigma of σᵢ over-bounds the error of the range measurements. The use of a general least squares position solution (or mathematically equivalent) results in a joint Gaussian distribution for the
components (North, East, Up) of the position error. Any accuracy metric that can be mathematically demonstrated to provide a minimum 95% containment in the position domain under the Gaussian assumption is also acceptable.

(c) **Horizontal Position Latency — AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.070(a).1.2(e)**

**Time of Measurement to Time of Applicability**

**Applicability:** ETSO-C129a (JTSO-C129a)

The intent of this qualification is to ensure that position and related quality indicator information are related to the same time of applicability in a consistent manner.

Based on the particular receiver design, GNSS equipment manufacturers should use a manufacturer-defined test, and/or analysis to determine the latency between the time satellite measurements are collated for processing and the time the equipment calculates a filtered (impulse response) position solution. The equipment should meet a 500-millisecond time of measurement to time of applicability requirement and account for the impulse response of the position solution.

*Note:* Whilst CS ACNS.D.ADSB does not establish requirements on the time of measurement, the above qualification has been incorporated to ensure consistency with FAA AC 20-165A.

**Time of Applicability to Time of Output**

**Applicability:** ETSO-C129a (JTSO-C129a)

The GNSS equipment manufacturer should document the position source latency from time of applicability to time of position output. If this latency exceeds 0.4 seconds, it may not support the 1.5-second total ADS-B transmission latency at the aircraft level (refer also to AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.115).

**Time Mark**

**Applicability:** ETSO-C129a (JTSO-C129a), ETSO-C196a, ETSO-C145()/C146()

If the use of the time mark to reduce latency is implemented in the ADS-B Out system, GNSS equipment manufacturers should provide installation instructions describing how the time mark relates to the time of applicability of the position, velocity, and related quality indicator information.

(d) **Horizontal Velocity Accuracy — AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.070(a).1.2(f)**

**Environmental Noise Test Conditions:**

**Applicability:** ETSO-C129a, ETSO-C145() /C146() (JTSO-C145/C146)

For equipment that was not required to meet the environmental noise standard prescribed by DO-235B, the velocity tests in AC 20-138B, Appendix 4 use environmental noise test conditions that may cause the equipment to stop functioning, i.e. to lose satellite acquisition and tracking capability that causes the equipment to stop outputting velocity. Whilst this contributes to an ADS-B availability issue for operators, this loss of function will not prevent the equipment from being used as an ADS-B velocity input, provided:

1. the equipment does not output misleading velocity information at or after the onset of the triggering interference levels; and

*Note:* A method to accomplish this is first running the test at the higher noise level to ensure there is no misleading velocity information at loss of function before running the complete test at the lower noise level.
(2) the equipment manufacturer should state that the equipment meets the noise requirements in DO-235B.

If the above conditions are met, the velocity tests in Appendix 4 of AC 20-138B (see below for NACv=1 and NACv=2 cases) can be run using an interference level that does not cause the equipment to lose acquisition and tracking.

**ADS-B Out system installations intending to support NACv = 1:**

**Applicability:** ETSO-C129a (JTSO-C129a), ETSO-C196a, ETSO-C145()/146()

The GNSS equipment manufacturer should perform the velocity tests in Appendix 4 of AC 20-138B associated with NACv = 1 to substantiate the equipment's velocity output.

The GNSS equipment manufacturer should indicate that the equipment satisfies the requirements for NACv =1 in the instructions for the ADS-B integration.

**ADS-B Out system installations intending to support NACv = 2:**

**Applicability:** ETSO-C129a (JTSO-C129a), ETSO-C196a, ETSO-C145()/146()

The GNSS equipment manufacturer should substantiate that the equipment dynamically outputs HFOMv and VFOMv and perform the velocity tests in AC 20-138C Appendix 4 associated with NACv = 1 and NACv = 2 to substantiate the equipment’s velocity output.

The GNSS equipment manufacturer should indicate that the equipment satisfies the requirements for NACv = 2 in the instructions for ADS-B Out system integration.

**Track Angle Validity:**

**Applicability:** ETSO-C129a (JTSO-C129a), ETSO-C196a, ETSO-C145()/146()

Using test and/or analysis for substantiation data, GNSS manufacturers should provide instructions for the ADS-B Out system integrator indicating when the track angle 95% accuracy, when derived from north/east velocity, exceeds plus/minus ‘eight’ degrees. It is acceptable for the instructions to state that the track angle does not meet the required accuracy below a specified speed.

**Note 1:** Track Angle Validity is only an issue at taxiing speeds. Thereby, only along-track acceleration (0.58g) and jerk (0.25g/sec) are assumed to apply.

**Note 2:** Use should be made of the test environment specified in Appendix 4 of AC 20-138B. The interference levels used to demonstrate velocity accuracy compliance can be used for true track angle validity testing as well.

(e) **Geometric Altitude Accuracy (VFOM) — AMC ACNS.D.ADSB.085**

**Applicability:** ETSO-C129a (JTSO-C129a), ETSO-C196a, ETSO-C145()/146()

GNSS equipment manufacturers should provide substantiation data showing if and how the equipment computes and outputs VFOM. If VFOM is output, the following criteria for an acceptable HAE-referenced geometric altitude output and its associated VFOM accuracy metric are recommended to be applied:

(1) The HAE output should be calculated using the general least squares position solution of DO-229D Appendix J.1 (or any mathematically equivalent linear combination of range measurements). There is no restriction on the choice of the weight matrix W including non-weighted solutions; the use of the LNAV/VNAV, LP, LPV approach weight (\( w_i = 1/\sigma_i^2 \)) is optional.

(2) The HAE accuracy should be tested using the procedure of DO-229D Section 2.5.8.3. The \( \sigma_i^2 \) used to compute the variance \( dU^2 \) should be greater or equal to the ones listed in DO-229D Appendix J when the equipment uses SBAS-provided integrity and greater or equal to the ones listed as an acceptable means for FDE-
provided integrity in section 2.1.2.2.2 when the equipment does not use SBAS-provided integrity. A fixed sigma of 33.3 m is considered a sufficient over-bound when using FDE-provided integrity. For equipment that uses SBAS-provided integrity, testing only in the highest mode attainable for its declared Operational Class as specified in the test itself is acceptable.

(3) The accuracy metric should be greater or equal to $1.96 \sigma_u$ where $\sigma_u$ is computed using the same $\sigma_i$ employed during the HAE accuracy test procedure. General certification substantiation data that the equipment meets this requirement is sufficient; no specific test is required.

For GPS equipment that outputs altitude references other than HAE whilst the overall ADS-B Out System meets AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.085(b), an equivalent data accuracy should be demonstrated.

Note 1: The scaling factors for the vertical position accuracy metrics were rounded to 2 decimal places; there is no intention to prohibit the use of a more accurate number.

Note 2: The vertical position accuracy metrics listed above are the standard metrics used to provide a minimum of 95 % containment (varying from 95 % to approximately 98.5 % for the vertical metrics) under the assumption that a Gaussian distribution with a sigma of $\sigma_i$ over-bounds the error of the range measurements. The use of a general least squares position solution (or mathematically equivalent) results in a single Gaussian distribution for the components (North, East, Up) of the position error. Any accuracy metric that can be mathematically demonstrated to provide a minimum 95 % containment in the position domain under the Gaussian assumption is also acceptable.
Appendix H

Part 6 – Compliance Matrix BDS Register Fields

This part of Appendix H lists compliance matrices of the BDS register fields transmitted by the 1090 ES ADS-B transmit unit, with respect to the population of the 1090 ES data fields with data from approved sources (CS ACNS.D.ADSB.025(a) applies).

Omitted in the tables are fields containing the subtype codes (for these, refer to Part 1 of this Appendix) and reserved fields.

Reference to ADS-B Out item numbers is made in line with Part 1 of this Appendix respectively. Reference to Definitions is made in line with Part 1 of this Appendix.

Within the requirements (Req’t) column, ‘M’ expresses a mandatory requirement, i.e. the respective fields are populated with data from approved sources. ‘O’ expresses an optional requirement, ‘NA’ expresses non-applicability and ‘C’ expresses a conditional requirement (requirement is mandatory provided that the condition expressed in the remark column is met).

In addition to the 1090 ES data fields (as specified by the respective ‘ME’ Bits conveyed within the downlink format DF 17), the 3-bit ‘Capability (CA)’ field, also conveyed within downlink format DF 17, should be populated for all registers as follows:

**DF 17 – CA Field**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DF 17 bits</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Req’t</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>Capability</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Refer to ICAO Annex 10, Volume IV, section 3.1.2.5.2.2.1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Register 05\textsubscript{16} – Airborne Position Message**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ME Bits</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Req’t</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>Surveillance Status</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘0’, no condition information = ‘1’, Item 7a, Definition 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>= ‘2’, Mode A code change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>= ‘3’, Item 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>NIC Supplement-B</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4b, Definition 4 and 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-20</td>
<td>Altitude</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 5, Definition 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Time (T)</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>“GNSS time mark coupled” (‘0’ no, ‘1’ yes), Item 4a, Definition 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>CPR Format (F)</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Compact Position Reporting (CPR) format type (‘0’ even, ‘1’ odd), Item 4a, Definition 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23-39</td>
<td>CPR Encoded Latitude</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4a, Definition 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40-56</td>
<td>CPR Encoded Longitude</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4a, Definition 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Register 06<sub>16</sub> – Surface Position Message

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ME Bits</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Req’t</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-12</td>
<td>Movement</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 14, Definitions 11 and 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Heading/Ground Track Status</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 13, Definition 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14-20</td>
<td>Heading/Ground Track</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Time (T)</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>‘GNSS time mark coupled’ (‘0’ no, ‘1’ yes), Item 4a, Definition 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>CPR Format (F)</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Compact Position Reporting (CPR) format type (‘0’ even, ‘1’ odd), Item 4a, Definition 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23-39</td>
<td>CPR Encoded Latitude</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4a, Definition 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40-56</td>
<td>CPR Encoded Longitude</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Register 08<sub>16</sub> – Aircraft Identification and Category Message

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ME Bits</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Req’t</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>ADS-B Emitter Category</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 10, Definition 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-56</td>
<td>Identification Characters #1-#8</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6 bits per character, Item 1, Definition 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Register 09<sub>16</sub> – Airborne Velocity Message - Velocity over Ground (Subtypes 1 and 2, Normal/Supersonic)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ME Bits</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Req’t</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>Subtype</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>‘0’ normal, ‘1’ supersonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Intent Change Flag</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Mode S protocol support, indication of new information in GICB registers 40&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt; to 42&lt;sub&gt;16&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-13</td>
<td>NAC&lt;sub&gt;V&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 9b, Definition 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>E/W Direction Bit</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 9a, Definition 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-24</td>
<td>E/W Velocity</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>N/S Direction Bit</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26-35</td>
<td>N/S Velocity</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Vertical Rate Source</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 11, Definition 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Vertical Rate Sign</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38-46</td>
<td>Vertical Rate</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Difference from Barometric Altitude Sign</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 17a, Definition 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-56</td>
<td>Difference from Barometric Altitude</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Register 09\textsubscript{16} - Airborne Velocity Message - Airspeed (Subtypes 3 and 4, Normal/Supersonic)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ME Bits</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Req’t</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>Subtype</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>‘0’ normal, ‘1’ supersonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Intent Change Flag</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Mode S protocol support, indication of new information in GICB registers 40\textsubscript{16} to 42\textsubscript{16}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-13</td>
<td>NAC\textsubscript{V}</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Item 9b, Definition 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Heading Status Bit</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Item 9a, Definition 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-24</td>
<td>Heading</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Item 9a, Definition 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Airspeed Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Item 9a, Definition 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26-35</td>
<td>Airspeed</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Item 9a, Definition 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Vertical Rate Source</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 11, Definition 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Vertical Rate Sign</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 11, Definition 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38-46</td>
<td>Vertical Rate</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 11, Definition 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Difference from Barometric Altitude Sign</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 17a, Definition 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-56</td>
<td>Difference from Barometric Altitude</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 17a, Definition 19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Register 61\textsubscript{16} - Aircraft Status Message - Emergency Status and Mode A Code

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ME Bits</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Req’t</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>Subtype</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>=‘1’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-11</td>
<td>Emergency/Priority Status</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Mandatory codes: ‘0’, ‘1’, ‘4’ and ‘5’, Item 7a, Definition 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-24</td>
<td>Mode A Code</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 2, Definition 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Register 61\textsubscript{16} - Aircraft Status Message - ACAS RA Broadcast

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ME Bits</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Req’t</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5-8</td>
<td>Subtype</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>=‘2’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-22</td>
<td>Active Resolution Advisories</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 20b, Definition 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23-26</td>
<td>RACs Record</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 20b, Definition 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>RA Terminated</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 20b, Definition 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Multiple Threat Encounter</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 20b, Definition 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29-30</td>
<td>Threat Type Indicator</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 20b, Definition 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31-56</td>
<td>Threat Identity Data</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 20b, Definition 22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Register 62_{16} - Target State and Status Message

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ME Bits</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Req’t</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>Subtype</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘1’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>SIL Supplement</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4d, Definition 4 and 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Selected Altitude Type</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-20</td>
<td>MCP/FCU Selected Altitude or FMS Selected Altitude</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Where available in a suitable format Item 18, Definition 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21-29</td>
<td>Barometric Pressure Setting</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Where available in a suitable format Minus 800 millibars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Selected Heading Status</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Selected Heading Sign</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>not required by Commission Regulation (EU) No 1207/2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-39</td>
<td>Selected Heading</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40-43</td>
<td>Navigation Accuracy Category Position (NAC_p)</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4c, Definition 4 and 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Navigation Integrity Category Baro</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 5, Definition 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-46</td>
<td>Source Integrity Level</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4d, Definition 4 and 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Status of MCP/FCU Mode Bits</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Autopilot Engaged</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Item 18, Definition 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>VNAV Mode Engaged</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Altitude Hold Mode</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Approach Mode</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>TCAS Operational</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 20a, Definition 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>LNAV Mode Engaged</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Item 18, Definition 21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Register 65,6 – Aircraft Operational Status Message - While Airborne

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ME Bits</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Req’t</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>Subtype</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘0’ (Airborne)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>Airborne Capability Class Subtype</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘0,0’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>TCAS Operational</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 20a, Definition 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>1090 ES IN</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>not required by EU Regulation No 1207/2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Air Referenced Velocity Report Capability</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘0’, if aircraft is not capable of sending Airborne Velocity, Subtype 3 or 4 = ‘1’, if yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Target State Report Capability</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘1’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17-18</td>
<td>Trajectory Change Report Capability</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘0’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>UAT IN</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>not required by EU Regulation No 1207/2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-26</td>
<td>Airborne Operational Mode Subtype</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘0,0’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>TCAS RA Active</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 20b, Definition 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>IDENT Switch Active</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Single Antenna Flag</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘0’, see CS-ACNS.D.ADSB.040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31-32</td>
<td>System Design Assurance</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4e, Definition 4 &amp; 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41-43</td>
<td>MOPS Version Number</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘2’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>NIC Supplement-A</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4b, Definition 4 &amp; 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-48</td>
<td>NACP</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4c, Definition 4 &amp; 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49-50</td>
<td>GVA</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 17b, Definition 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51-52</td>
<td>Source Integrity Level</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4d, Definition 4 &amp; 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>NICBaro</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 5, Definition 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Horizontal Reference Direction (HRD)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>‘0’ true north, ‘1’ magnetic north (Airborne Velocity, subtype 3 &amp; 4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>SIL Supplement</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4d, Definition 4 &amp; 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Register 65\textsubscript{16} – Aircraft Operational Status Message - On the Surface

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ME Bits</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Req’t</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>Subtype</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘1’ (Surface)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>Surface Capability Class Subtype</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘0,0’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>1090 ES IN</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>not required by Commission Regulation (EU) No 1207/2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>B2 Low</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>not applicable (targeting at class B2 equipment, e.g. ground vehicles)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>UAT IN</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>not required by Commission Regulation (EU) No 1207/2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17-19</td>
<td>NAC\textsubscript{v}</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 9b, Definition 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>NIC Supplement C</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 12b, Definition 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21-24</td>
<td>Length/Width Codes</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 15, Definition 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-26</td>
<td>Surface Operational Mode Subtype</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘0,0’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>TCAS RA Active</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 20b, Definition 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>IDENT Switch Active</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Single Antenna Flag</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘0’, see CS ACNS.D.ADSB.040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31-32</td>
<td>System Design Assurance</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4e, Definition 4 and 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33-40</td>
<td>GPS Antenna Offset</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 16, Definition 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41-43</td>
<td>MOPS Version Number</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>= ‘2’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>NIC Supplement-A</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 12b, Definition 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-48</td>
<td>NAC\textsubscript{p}</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4c, Definition 4 and 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51-52</td>
<td>Source Integrity Level</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4d, Definition 4 and 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Track Angle/Heading</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 9d, Definition 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Horizontal Reference Direction (HRD)</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>‘0’ true north, ‘1’ magnetic north Item 13, Definition 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>SIL Supplement</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Item 4d, Definition 4 and 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix I — On-the-ground status Test and Validation Guidance for Aeroplanes

The ADS-B Out system installer should verify that the air-ground status inputs (or algorithms) are functioning properly and that the ADS-B Out system transmits the appropriate airborne messages or surface messages based on the On-the-ground status. This can be accomplished with simulated inputs to the appropriate sensors or accomplished in conjunction with the flight test.

The following tests provide guidance to the aircraft integrator for the verification of the ADS-B Out system installation, as appropriate. Separate cases are presented depending on the need to validate the status within the ADS-B transmit unit.

(a) Directly determined On-the-ground status being validated outside the ADS-B transmit function:

Modern aircraft with integrated avionics suites commonly contain sophisticated algorithms for determining the On-the-ground status based on multiple aircraft sensors. These algorithms are customised to the airframe and designed to overcome individual sensor failures. These algorithms are an acceptable means to determine the On-the-ground status and do not require additional validation.

(b) Validation of directly determined On-the-ground status not being validated outside the ADS-B transmit function:

If ground speed or airspeed is larger than the aeroplane’s typical rotation speed, then the On-the-ground status is (changed to) airborne and the airborne position message is broadcast irrespective of the directly determined On-the-ground status (i.e. as indicated to the ADS-B transmit function).

(c) Indirectly determined On-the-ground status validation within the ADS-B transmit unit:

If an aircraft is not equipped with a means, such as a weight-on-wheels switch, to determine whether it is airborne or on the ground, then the following tests should be performed to determine whether to broadcast the Airborne or Surface Position Messages.

(1) If the aircraft’s radio height (RH) parameter is available, and RH is less than 15 m (50 feet), and at least ground speed (GS) or airspeed (AS) is available, and the GS or the AS are less than 51 m/s (100 knots), then that aircraft broadcasts the surface position message.

If all three parameters are available, the decision to broadcast the Airborne or Surface Position Messages is determined by the logical AND of all three parameters.

(2) If radio height (RH) is not available, and if the aircraft’s ground speed (GS) and airspeed (AS) are available, and GS<26 m/s (50 knots) and AS<26 m/s (50 knots), then that aircraft broadcasts the surface position message.

Otherwise, the aircraft broadcasts the Airborne Position Message.

On-the-ground status Test and Validation Guidance for Helicopters, Lighter-than-Air Vehicles and Fixed-under-Carriage Aeroplanes

Installations intended for this category that are unable to provide a compliant direct or indirect ground status detection function, should only broadcast the Airborne Position Message. In addition, the “CA” capability field in downlink format DF 17 should be set accordingly.
### Appendix J — Comparison between EASA CS ACNS.D.ADSB and FAA AC 20-165A Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CS ACNS.D.ADSB Reference</th>
<th>Comparison</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.010</strong></td>
<td>CS addresses 1090 ES as the only ADS-B Out data link, AC UAT as well.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **CS ACNS.D.ADSB.020**  | Parameters required by CS, optional for AC: GPS Antenna Offset.  
Parameters required by CS where available in suitable format, optional for AC: Vertical Rate and Selected Altitude.  
Parameters required by CS where available in suitable, not addressed by AC: Barometric Pressure Setting.  
Parameters not required by CS, required by AC: ADS-B In Capability.  
Parameters not addressed by CS, optional for AC: Selected Heading.  
All other parameters are required by both the CS and AC. |
| **CS ACNS.D.ADSB.025**  | No difference. |
| **CS ACNS.D.ADSB.030**  | No difference. |
| **CS ACNS.D.ADSB.040**  | CS requires antenna diversity (as applicable to Commission Regulation (EU) No 1207/2011 aircraft).  
Within AC, single bottom-mounted antenna installations are allowed for ETSO-C166b classes A1S and B1S. |
<p>| <strong>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.050</strong>  | No difference. |
| <strong>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.055</strong>  | No difference. |
| <strong>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.060</strong>  | No difference. |
| <strong>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.070</strong>  | No difference overall. However, CS specifies ETSO-C129a as a minimum requirement (in line with Commission Regulation (EU) No 1207/2011). |
| <strong>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.080</strong>  | No difference, as applicable to the common data parameters (see also ‘CS ACNS.D.ADSB.020’). |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>CS ACNS.D.ADSB Reference</strong></th>
<th><strong>Comparison</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.085 Geometric Altitude</td>
<td>No difference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.090 Flight Deck Interface</td>
<td>No difference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.100 Integrity</td>
<td>No difference, however, CS details requirements per data parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.105 Continuity</td>
<td>No requirement expressed in AC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.110 Horizontal Position and Velocity Data Refresh Rate</td>
<td>No difference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.115 Horizontal Position and Velocity Total Latency</td>
<td>CS uses time of applicability as a reference, AC time of measurement. In line with the AC recommendation that the difference between the two references should be less than or equal to 500ms, the total latency requirements are effectively the same (CS: 1.5s, AC 2.0s).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS ACNS.D.ADSB.120 Horizontal Position Uncompensated Latency</td>
<td>No difference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMC1 ACNS.D.ADSB.010(b) Flight Test</td>
<td>AC requires a flight test, for any set of component part numbers of the ADS-B Out system on a given aircraft type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Subpart E — Others

SECTION 1 — TERRAIN AWARENESS AND WARNING SYSTEM (TAWS)

GM1 ACNS.E.TAWS.001  Applicability

CS ACNS.TAWS airworthiness requirements are not suitable to allow the use of TAWS for navigation or for mitigation of navigation system failures.

AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.005  TAWS equipment approval

The Class A or Class B TAWS equipment should be approved in accordance with ETSO-C151b.

AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.010  Required functions

Note: An example of an acceptable TAWS installation is provided at Appendix 2.

(a) For the voice call out a predetermined altitude of 150 m (500 ft.) has been found acceptable. However, another altitude may be allowed when a call-out at 150 m (500 ft.) would interfere with other operations.

(b) For Class B equipment the predetermined altitude voice callout is based upon barometric height above runway elevation.

Note: The nearest runway elevation may be used for this purpose.

(c) TAWS equipment may compute Barometric Altitude Rate using an Instantaneous Vertical Speed Indicator (IVSI) or an inertial smoothed vertical speed indicator. An alternative means, with demonstrated equal or better accuracy, may be used in lieu of barometric altitude rate (accuracy specified in ETSO-C10b, Altimeter, Pressure Actuated, Sensitive Type, or later revisions) and/or altimeter altitude (accuracy specified in ETSO-2C87 (Low range radio altimeters) - or later revisions) to meet the warning requirements described in RTCA Document No. DO-161A. In addition, ETSO-C106 for Air Data Computers may be used as an alternative means of compliance with this provision.

(d) An interface with the accident data recording system to record alerts from the TAWS and to record, where practicable, when FLTA or PDA is inhibited.

Note 1: It is not necessary to be able to distinguish between the Basic GPWS and the new FLTA and/or PDA alerts from the recording. The voice recorder will be used for this purpose.

Note 2: Where the data recorded by the Flight Data Recorder is modified, the document which presents the information necessary to retrieve and convert the stored data into engineering units, will need to be amended by the operator.

AMC 2 ACNS.E.TAWS.010  Required functions

In case of descent the TAWS should provide an automatic call out when descending through a predefined altitude (typically 150 m (500 ft) above terrain or above the elevation of nearest runway).

For a Class B TAWS in order to compensate for the lack of 'excessive closure rate to terrain' function the predefined altitude should be 500ft.
AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.015 FLTA function requirements

(a) The TAWS lateral search area should be less than the protected area defined by ICAO PANS OPS 8168, volume 2 to prevent nuisance alerts.

Note: The required obstacle (terrain) clearance (ROC) have been used to define the minimum requirements for obstacle/terrain clearance (RTC) appropriate to the FLTA function

(b) As an alternate to the stepped down reduction from the terminal to approach phase in CS ACNS.E.TAWS.015 Table 1, a linear reduction of the RTC as the aeroplane comes closer to the nearest runway is allowed, providing the requirements of CS ACNS.E.TAWS.015 Table 1 are met.

(c) During the visual segment of a normal instrument approach (typically about 1850 m (1 NM) from the runway threshold), the RTC should be defined/reduced to minimise nuisance alerts.

(d) The RTC values can be reduced slightly for descending flight conditions to accommodate the dynamic conditions and pilot response times.

(e) The FLTA search volume should vary as a function of phase of flight, distance from runway, and the required terrain clearance.

GM1 ACNS.E.TAWS.020 PDA function requirements

The purpose of the PDA alert is to increase pilot’s awareness. Therefore ‘significantly below’ means the point below the profile where the pilot would normally initiate a Go Around (e.g. for ILS this would correspond to 1 dot deviation).

AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.025 Class A TAWS inhibition

(a) An automatic inhibit capability is acceptable if it uses the information of the TAWS as a failure monitoring function.

(b) If an automatic inhibition is provided and it automatically inhibits the FLTA alerts, PDA alerts and terrain display then the manual inhibit may be designed to only inhibit aural and visual alerts.

(c) A separate guarded control should be provided to inhibit GPWS alerts based on flaps being other than the landing configuration.

AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.030 Terrain information display

(a) Terrain data should be displayed in the normal field of view. Terrain that is more than 600 m (2000 ft.) below the aeroplane’s elevation need not be depicted.

(b) If terrain alerting information is displayed on a weather radar, an Electronic Flight Instrument System display, or other compatible display system available on the flight deck, then the TAWS information should be displayed in a manner consistent with other information (e.g. range, colour coding, symbology).

(c) When Auto-range switching is provided, an auto-ranging display should be designed so that it is evident to the flight crew that the range has been automatically selected. The range selected for auto-ranging should clearly depict the threat on the display. Manual reversion to a selected range should be simple.
AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.035  Aural and visual alerts

(a) The testing of the TAWS system integration within the aircraft should address the provision of the alerts listed in Table 1 below. In addition to this minimum set, other implemented optional voice alerts should be tested.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Condition</th>
<th>Caution</th>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ground proximity</td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altitude Loss after Take-off</td>
<td>Amber text message that is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>obvious, concise, and must be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>consistent with the Aural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>message</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘Don’t Sink’ and ‘Too Low Terrain’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Ground Proximity Envelope 1 (Not in Landing Configuration) | **Visual Alert** | Amber text message that is obvious, concise, and must be consistent with the Aural message **Aural Alert** | ‘Too Low Terrain’ and ‘Too Low Gear’ | |
| Class A equipment                                      | None required          |                              | None Required                      | |

| Ground Proximity Envelope 2 Insufficient Terrain Clearance (Landing and Go around configuration) | **Visual Alert** | Amber text message that is obvious, concise, and must be consistent with the Aural message **Aural Alert** | ‘Too Low Terrain’ and ‘Too Low Flaps’ | |
| Class A equipment                                      | None required          |                              | None Required                      | |

| Ground Proximity Envelope 4C Insufficient Terrain Clearance (Take-off configuration) | **Visual Alert** | Amber text message that is obvious, concise, and must be consistent with the Aural message **Aural Alert** | ‘Too Low Terrain’ | |
| Class A equipment                                      | None required          |                              | None Required                      | |

| Ground Proximity Excessive Glide Slope Deviation       | **Visual Alert** | Amber text message that is obvious, concise, and must be consistent with the Aural message **Aural Alert** | ‘Glide Slope’ | |
| Class A equipment                                      | None required          |                              | None Required                      | |

| Ground Proximity                                      | **Visual Alert** | None Required                  | None required                      | |

Visual Alert
Amber text message that is obvious, concise, and must be consistent with the Aural message

Aural Alert
‘Don’t Sink’ and ‘Too Low Terrain’
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Condition</th>
<th>Caution</th>
<th>Warning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Advisory Voice Call Out</td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class A &amp; Class B equipment</td>
<td>‘Five Hundred’</td>
<td>None Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced Required</td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain Clearance</td>
<td>Amber text message that is obvious, concise, and must be consistent with the Aural message</td>
<td>Red text message that is obvious, concise and must be consistent with the Aural message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class A &amp; Class B equipment</td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum selectable Voice Alerts: ‘Caution, Terrain; Caution, Terrain’ and ‘Terrain Ahead; Terrain Ahead’</td>
<td>Minimum selectable Voice Alerts: ‘Caution, Terrain; Terrain; Pull-Up, Pull-Up’ and ‘Terrain Ahead, Pull-Up; Terrain Ahead, Pull-Up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imminent Impact with Terrain</td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class A &amp; Class B equipment</td>
<td>Amber text message that is obvious, concise, and must be consistent with the Aural message</td>
<td>Red text message that is obvious, concise and must be consistent with the Aural message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum selectable Voice Alerts: ‘Caution, Terrain; Caution, Terrain’ and ‘Terrain Ahead; Terrain Ahead’</td>
<td>Minimum selectable Voice Alerts: ‘Caution, Terrain; Terrain; Pull-Up, Pull-Up’ and ‘Terrain Ahead, Pull-Up; Terrain Ahead, Pull-Up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Premature Descent Alert (PDA)</td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class A &amp; Class B equipment</td>
<td>Amber text message that is obvious, concise, and must be consistent with the Aural message</td>
<td>None required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None Required</td>
<td>None Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground Proximity Envelope 1, 2 or 3</td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive Descent Rate</td>
<td>Amber text message that is obvious, concise, and must be consistent with the Aural message</td>
<td>Red text message that is obvious, concise and must be consistent with the Aural message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class A &amp; Class B equipment</td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘Too Low Terrain’</td>
<td>‘Pull-Up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground Proximity Excessive Closure Rate (Flaps not in Landing Configuration)</td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class A equipment</td>
<td>Amber text message that is obvious, concise, and must be consistent with the Aural message</td>
<td>Red text message that is obvious, concise and must be consistent with the Aural message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘Terrain - Terrain’</td>
<td>‘Pull-Up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground Proximity Excessive Closure Rate (Landing)</td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Visual Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amber text message that is obvious, concise, and must be consistent with the Aural message</td>
<td>None required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
<td><strong>Aural Alert</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pull-Up’ - for gear up</td>
<td>Pull-Up’ - for gear up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert Condition</td>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration)</td>
<td>message Aural Alert</td>
<td>None required - for gear down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class A equipment</td>
<td>‘Terrain- Terrain’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 1: Visual and aural alerts**

(b) If a two tone sweep (‘Whoop Whoop’) is used then the complete cycle of the two tone sweeps plus annunciation may be extended from ‘1.4’ to ‘2’ seconds.

(c) Note: GPWS alerting thresholds may be adjusted or modified to be more compatible with the FLTA alerting functions and to minimize GPWS nuisance alerts.

(d) Parameters such as airspeed, groundspeed barometric altitude rate should be included in the logic that determines basic GPWS alerting time.

(e) GPWS alerting thresholds may be adjusted or modified to be more compatible with the FLTA alerting functions and to minimize GPWS nuisance alerts.

(f) Consideration should be given to presenting voice announcements at a pre-set level via headsets when they are in use.

**AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.055 Terrain and airport information**

Terrain data used for the generation of the TAWS terrain database should be compliant with EUROCAE ED-98 () – User Requirements for Terrain and Obstacle Data. Similarly airport and runway data terrain used for the generation of the TAWS airport database should be compliant with EUROCAE ED-77 () – Standards for Aeronautical Information. Generation of the TAWS terrain database and of the TAWS airport database should be compliant with EUROCAE ED-76 () – Standards for Processing Aeronautical Information.

*Note: Other technologies could be considered to provide the required terrain and airport information.*

The manufacturer of the TAWS system should present the development and methodology used to validate and verify the terrain and airport information and, if relevant, obstacle information in compliance with EUROCAE ED-76/RTCA DO-200A.

**AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.060 Positioning information**

(a) The TAWS positioning information can be generated internally to the TAWS (e.g. GPS receiver) or acquired by interfacing to other installed avionics on the aeroplane (e.g. FMS).

(1) For Class A TAWS an RNAV system may be used as an aeroplane horizontal position sensor provided that:
   - it has been approved for navigation in accordance with ETSO-C115() or ETSO-C129a or ETSO-C145() or ETSO-C146() or ETSO-C196a; or
   - it satisfies FAA AC 20-138 or FAA AC 20-130A.

(2) For Class A and B TAWS a GNSS sensor may be used as an aeroplane horizontal position sensor provided that it is compliant with ETSO-C196 or ETSO-C145.

*Note: For TAWS relying on GNSS sensor, the TAWS design should consider the use of other horizontal position sensors to ensure TAWS availability in case of GNSS failures*
(3) Equipment that uses a GNSS internal to the TAWS for horizontal position information, and that are capable of detecting a positional error that exceeds the appropriate alarm limit for the particular phase of flight in accordance with ED-72A is considered acceptable.

(4) Vertical position for TAWS may come from a barometric source such as an altimeter or an air data computer, or from a geometric source, such as GNSS provided that:

- the barometric altitude equipment is approved in accordance with ETSO-C106 Air data computer or ETSO-C10b Altimeter, Pressure Actuated, Sensitive Type;
- the radio altimeter equipment is approved in accordance with ETSO-2C87 Low-Range Radio Altimeter;
- the vertical velocity equipment is compliant with ETSO-C8 Vertical Velocity Instruments or ETSO-C105 Air Data Computer;
- the GNSS equipment is approved in accordance with:
  - ETSO-C129a, Airborne Supplemental Navigation Equipment Using Global Positioning System (GPS); or
  - ETSO-C145, Airborne Navigation Sensors Using the Global Positioning System Augmented by the Satellite Based Augmentation System; or
  - ETSO-C146, Stand-Alone Airborne Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System Augmented by the Satellite Based Augmentation System.

   Note: TAWS should mitigate potential vertical positioning source inaccuracies by appropriate blending of available vertical position information.

(b) When the GPS alert limit is activated, the GPS computed position is considered unsuitable for TAWS, and a TAWS unsuitability indication should be given.

(c) Geometric altitude should be enabled if the system has the facility.

**AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.075 Prioritisation schemes**

TAWS prioritisation schemes should be compliant with the content of Table 2:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Priority</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Alert Level</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Reactive Windshear Warning</td>
<td>W</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Sink Rate Pull-Up Warning</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Excessive Closure Pull-Up Warning</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>RTC Terrain Warning</td>
<td>W</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>V1 Callout</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Engine Fail Callout</td>
<td>W</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>FLTA Pull-Up Warning</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>PWS Warning</td>
<td>W</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>RTC Terrain Caution</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Minimums</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>FLTA Caution</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>7 s period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alert Priority</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Too Low Terrain</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>PDA ‘Too Low Terrain’ Caution</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Altitude Callouts</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Too Low Gear</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Too Low Flaps</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Sink Rate</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Don’t Sink</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Glideslope</td>
<td>C 3 s period</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>PWS Caution</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Approaching Minimums</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Bank Angle</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Reactive Windshear Caution</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode 6</td>
<td>TCAS RA (‘Climb’, ‘Descent’, etc)</td>
<td>W continuous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode 6</td>
<td>TCAS TA (‘Traffic, Traffic’)</td>
<td>C Continuous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2: Alert Prioritization Scheme

**Note 1:** These alerts can occur simultaneously with TAWS voice callout alerts.

**Note 2:** W = Warning, C = Caution, A = Advisory.

TAWS internal priority alerting scheme should be compliant with the content of Table 3 below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Priority</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sink Rate Pull-Up Warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Terrain Awareness Pull-Up warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Terrain Awareness Caution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>PDA ‘Too Low Terrain’ Caution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Altitude Callouts ‘500’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Sink Rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Don’t Sink (Mode 3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE3: TAWS Internal Alert Prioritization Scheme**

**AMC1 ACNS.E.TAWS.080 Pop-up mode**

For dual displays installations, when an automatic pop-up mode is provided, the pop-up function should be inhibited if terrain is already presented on at least one display.

If TAWS and the Predictive Windshear System share the same display and an automatic pop-up function is employed, the display priorities indicated in Table 4 are recommended:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Priority</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Highest</td>
<td>Terrain Awareness Warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Predictive Windshear Warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Terrain Awareness Caution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Predictive Windshear Caution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Normal Terrain Display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowest</td>
<td>Weather Radar Display</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 4: Alert display priorities

If the TAWS system provides alerting for obstacle threats, the priority for warning and cautions should be the same as those for terrain.
APPENDIX A: TAWS INSTALLATIONS TESTING GUIDANCE MATERIAL

General Testing:
(a) Most of the testing of a TAWS installation can be achieved by ground testing that verifies system operation, interfaces between affected aeroplane systems, correct warning prioritisation, and freedom from unwanted interaction or interference.

(b) The use of the TAWS as an integrated part of the aeroplane flight deck should be demonstrated. The TAWS should be shown to be compatible with the operation of the installed navigation systems, the airborne collision and avoidance system (ACAS), the windshear warning system, and the weather radar.

(c) The tests should evaluate the effects of sensor failure on TAWS operation.

(d) Flight testing should be carried out to evaluate overall operation, compatibility of TAWS with warning systems, navigation systems, and displays, freedom from unwanted interference, and to assess, during adverse flight conditions, instrument visibility, display intelligibility, sound levels and intelligibility of voice announcements, and the effects of electrical transients.

(e) Adequate flight testing to evaluate the terrain display can be conducted while verifying all the other required TAWS functions. Emphasis could be placed on showing compliance with CS ACNS.E.TAWS requirements during normal aeroplane manoeuvres for all phases of flight. Pop-up and auto-ranging features could be evaluated if applicable. Sustained turns could be performed, to evaluate for example symbol stability, flicker, jitter, display update rate, readability, the use of colour to depict relative elevation data, caution and warning alerts, and overall suitability of the display.

GPWS Testing:
(a) Flight testing to verify the proper operation of Basic GPWS functions can be conducted in any area where the terrain elevation is known to the flight crew. The following information provides an example of guidance for conducting flight tests to verify the proper operation of each GPWS function.

1. Excessive Rate of Descent. Descents toward near level terrain are recommended if they provide the best results and ease of correlation with designed Mode 1 envelopes. This test verifies the operation of barometric altitude (and the corresponding computation of barometric altitude rate) and radio altitude.

2. Excessive Closure Rate To Terrain. It is recommended that one level test run at an altitude between 150 m (500 ft.) and 300 m (1000 ft.) above the terrain elevation be conducted. This test will verify the proper installation of the radio altimeter.

3. Negative Climb Rate or Altitude Loss After take-off. If it is adequate this test can be conducted immediately after take-off before climbing above 700 AGL or above runway elevation. This test verifies the proper operation of barometric altitude, barometric altitude rate and radio altitude.

4. Flight Into Terrain When Not In Landing Configuration. If it is adequate this test can be conducted while on a visual approach to a suitable runway. This test verifies the proper installation of barometric altitude, barometric altitude rate and radio altitude as well as the gear and flap sensor inputs to TAWS.
(5) **Excessive Downward Deviation from an ILS Glideslope.** This test should be conducted during an ILS approach. This test will verify the proper operation of the ILS Glideslope input to TAWS.

(6) **Voice Callout ‘Five Hundred ft.** This test should be conducted during an approach to a suitable runway in order to verify the proper operation of barometric altitude and/or radio altitude.

(7) **Go-around.** This test can be performed to confirm that nuisance alerts do not occur during normal go-around manoeuvres.

**FLTA Testing:**

(a) Flight testing to verify the proper operation of the FLTA function can be conducted in an area where the terrain elevation for the test runs is known within approximately 90 m (300 ft.). Two test runs can be performed:

1. In level flight at approximately 150 m (500 ft) above the terrain of interest.
2. While descending toward the terrain of interest.

(b) In each test case, the terrain display, the aural and visual alerts, the navigation source input, and the terrain data base can each be evaluated if necessary. Confirmation that the specific terrain cells do generate the required alert can also be evaluated if necessary.

*Note: To conduct the test as described, the chosen terrain could be for example at least 28 Km (15 NM) away from the nearest airport. If this is not practical, the fly-over altitude will have to be lowered, for example to 90 m (300 ft) or less above the terrain in order to generate a TAWS alert.*

**PDA Testing:**

(a) Flight testing to verify the proper operation of the PDA function can be conducted in any airport area within an adequate distance of the nearest runway for example, 18.5 Km (10 NM). The aeroplane should be configured for landing at an adequate height for example, 450 m (1500 ft) AGL, along the final approach segment of the runway at an adequate distance from the runway, for example, 18.5 Km (10 NM).

(b) At a suitable point, a normal flight path angle descent, for example, three degrees can be initiated and maintained until the PDA alert occurs. This test may exercise also, if necessary the 500 ft. voice callout.

The adequacy of the PDA aural alert should be verified during this test. If necessary, this test could verify the adequacy of the airport data base, the navigation source input and the barometric and/or radio altitude inputs to TAWS.

*Note: The area in the vicinity of the runway selected for this test should be relatively free from terrain and obstacles to preclude activation of the FLTA function. Approximately level terrain along the final approach segment will exercise the PDA function.*

(c) Flight tests should be conducted to verify that conditions at 300 m (1000 ft) AGL within 18.5 – 28 Km (10 -15 NM) of the nearest airport the TAWS system does not generate alerts.
APPENDIX B: EXAMPLE OF AN ACCEPTABLE TAWS INSTALLATION

An example of an acceptable installation is a single approved TAWS comprising the following components or inputs:

(a) A single terrain awareness and warning computer.
(b) A single radio altimeter sensor.
(c) A single air data system.
(d) An ILS/GBAS/SBAS/MLS/MMR receiver for Class A TAWS only.
(e) An interface with the landing gear and flaps.
(f) A roll attitude sensor.
(g) An accurate source of aeroplane position e.g. Flight Management System (FMS), or a Global Positioning System (GPS) or both.
(h) Where operations are reliant on the use of QFE, an adequate means of determining the altitude should be provided.
(i) A terrain database covering the expected region of normal operations, together with a means of updating the stored data and to check its validity (by effective date and geographical region).
(j) A terrain awareness display.
(k) A loudspeaker for voice announcements.
(l) Consideration should be given to presenting voice announcements via headsets at a preset level particularly where active noise-reducing or noise cancelling headsets are used.
(m) Indication of TAWS and sensor failures.
(n) Indication that the TAWS is operating in Basic GPWS mode only.
(o) A means to initiate the TAWS self-test function on the ground.
(p) An interface with the flight recording system to record TAWS alerts and inhibition of FLTA or PDA functions.
(q) Indication to the flight crew where geographical regions of operation or other factors which adversely affect system performance to the extent that the TAWS may be potentially misleading and should not be relied upon. If this indication is not practicable, a flight crew procedure may be used to determine whether the navigation system accuracy is acceptable for continued use of the TAWS.
(r) A means for the flight crew to inhibit the FLTA and PDA functions together with appropriate annunciation of the inhibited condition.
(s) A display with a means for the flight crew to select or deselect the terrain information. An automatic pop-up mode may be used with a simple means to deselect the terrain information after an automatic pop-up.
Appendix 3 — Background information for Terrain Awareness and Warning System (TAWS)

(a) General
This appendix provides additional references, background information, and guidance for maintenance testing, as appropriate to TAWS installations.

(b) Related References

(1) EASA
   (i) ETSO-C151b Terrain Awareness and Warning System (TAWS) dated 18/12/2007
   (ii) ETSO-C92c Ground Proximity Warning, Glide Slope Deviation Alerting Equipment dated 24/10/2003
   (iii) ETSO-C10b Aircraft Altimeter, Pressure Actuated, Sensitive Type dated 24/10/2003
   (iv) ETSO-2C87 Low Range Radio Altimeters dated 24/10/2003
   (v) ETSO-C106 Air Data Computer dated 24/10/2003
   (vi) ETSO–C115b Airborne Area Navigation Equipment using Multi-Sensor Inputs dated 24/10/2003
   (x) ETSO-C196a Airborne Supplemental navigation Sensors for Global Positioning System Equipment Using Aircraft-Based Augmentation dated 05/07/2012
   (xi) ETSO-C105 Optional Display Equipment for Weather and Ground Mapping Radar Indicators dated 24/10/2003

(2) ICAO

(3) EUROCAE
   (i) ED-98 () User requirements for Terrain and Obstacle Data (any edition - last edition B dated September 2012)
   (ii) ED-76 Standards for processing aeronautical data dated October 1998 (identical to RTCA DO-200A)

(4) RTCA
   DO-161A Minimum Performance Standards-Airborne Ground Proximity Warning Equipment dated 27/05/1976
SECTION 2 – REDUCED VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMUM (RVSM)

AMC1 ACNS.E.RVSM.001 Applicability

Previous airworthiness certification against JAA TGL6 is an acceptable means of compliance for the RVSM system.

AMC1 ACNS.E.RVSM.005 RVSM system

(a) When Static Source Error Corrections (SSEC) are required they should be embedded within the altimetry system.

Note: The design aim for SSEC is to correct for the residual static source error, compatible with the RVSM performance requirements.

(b) For RVSM systems with SSEC, an equivalent SSEC should be applied to the altitude control signal.

AMC1 ACNS.E.RVSM.010 Required functions

The signal representing the altitude alerting system may be used either directly, or combined with other sensor signals. The signal may be an altitude deviation signal, relative to the selected altitude, or a suitable absolute altitude signal.

AMC1 ACNS.E.RVSM.030 RVSM system performance requirement

If the design and characteristics of the aircraft and its altimetry system are such that the performance requirements are not satisfied by the location and geometry of the static sources alone, then suitable Static Source Error Corrections should be applied automatically within the altimetry system.

AMC1 ACNS.E.RVSM.035 Altimetry system accuracy

To demonstrate the compliance with ASE performances the following steps should be performed:

(a) Group determination:

1. Aircraft should have been constructed to a nominally identical design and be approved on the same Type Certificate (TC). Aircraft modified to a TC amendment, or by a Supplemental TC may be considered as part of the same group providing that all height keeping performance characteristics as described in the following paragraphs remain the same.

2. The static system of each aircraft should be nominally identical. The Static Source Error and any applied SSE Corrections should be the same for all aircraft of the group. Differences affecting factors that contribute to the Static Source Error (see Appendix A, Table 1), that effect RVSM performances and accuracy should be demonstrated as negligible.

3. The operational flight envelope should be the same.

4. The avionics units installed on each aircraft to meet the minimum RVSM performance requirements should demonstrate equivalent height keeping system performance in relation to; altitude control, altitude reporting and the interface to the altimetry system sensors. Altimetry system integrity should be the same with equivalent reliability, degradation and failure rates.

If an airframe does not meet the conditions above to qualify as a member of a Group, or is presented as an individual airframe for approval, then it will be considered as a non-group aircraft for the purposes of RVSM approval.

(b) RVSM Flight envelopes boundaries (Full and Basic)
The RVSM full flight envelope boundaries should be defined based on the RVSM airspace and aircraft or group aircraft characteristics as summarised in Table 1.

The RVSM basic envelope boundaries are similar to the ones of the full flight envelope, however, the upper Mach boundary may be lower than the one of the full flight envelope but not be less than the Long Range Cruise Mach Number plus 0.04 Mach, unless limited by available cruise thrust, buffet or other flight limitations. This reduction in upper Mach value would typically apply to cases where airspeeds could be limited to the range of airspeeds over which the aircraft can reasonably be expected to operate most frequently.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Lower Boundary is defined by</th>
<th>Upper Boundary is defined by</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flight Level</td>
<td>FL 290</td>
<td>The lower of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- FL 410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Aircraft maximum certified altitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Altitude limited by: cruise thrust; buffet; other aircraft flight limitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mach or Speed</td>
<td>The lower of:</td>
<td>The lower of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Maximum endurance (holding speed)</td>
<td>- MMO/VMO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Manoeuvre speed</td>
<td>- Speed limited by cruise thrust; buffet; other aircraft flight limitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross Weight</td>
<td>The lowest gross weight</td>
<td>The highest gross weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>compatible with operations in RVSM airspace</td>
<td>compatible with operations in RVSM airspace</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 1 - Full RVSM envelope boundaries**

(c) Test performance results presentation:

The test performance results may be presented on a single chart if the RVSM flight envelope is plotted using $W/\delta$ (weight divided by atmospheric pressure ratio) versus Mach number.

*Note: This is due to the relationship between $W/\delta$ and the fundamental aerodynamic variables $M$ and lift coefficient as shown below.*

$$W/\delta = 1481.4C_L M^2 S_{Ref}$$

where:

$\delta = \text{ambient pressure at flight altitude divided by sea level standard pressure of 1013.25 hPa}$

$W/\delta = \text{Weight over Atmospheric Pressure Ratio}$

$C_L = \text{Lift Coefficient}$

$M = \text{Mach number}$

$S_{Ref} = \text{Reference Wing Area}$

Since $\delta$ is a fixed value for a given altitude, weight can be obtained for a given condition by simply multiplying the $W/\delta$ value by $\delta$. Furthermore, over the RVSM altitude range, it is a good approximation to assume that position error is uniquely related to Mach number and $W/\delta$ for a given aircraft.

(d) Error budget
The demonstration of compliance with the RVSM performance criteria should include a justification of the contribution of all significant errors to the ASE (Error Budget). Appendix A provides guidance supporting the development of such justification.

*Note: A trade-off may be made between the various error sources which contribute to ASE (e.g.: in the case of an aircraft group approval, the smaller the mean of the group and the more stringent the avionics standard, the larger the available allowance for the SSE variations). The ASE performance demonstration should consider this ASE trade off.*

(e) **ASE Flight Calibration Methods**

Where flight calibrations are used to quantify or verify altimetry system performance they should be accomplished by any of the following methods. Flight calibrations should be performed only when appropriate ground checks have been completed. Uncertainties in application of the method will need to be assessed and taken into account in the data package.

1. Precision tracking radar in conjunction with pressure calibration of atmosphere at test altitude.
2. Trailing cone.
3. Pacer aircraft.
4. Any other method acceptable to the competent authority

*Note: When using pacer aircraft, the pacer aircraft will need to be calibrated directly to a known standard. It is not acceptable to calibrate a pacer aircraft by another pacer aircraft.*

(f) **Compliance Demonstration for Groups of Aircraft.**

Because of the statistical nature of the performance requirements, the demonstration of the compliance may vary considerably from group to group and therefore for a group aircraft the following process should be applied:

1. The mean and airframe-to-airframe variability of ASE should be established, based on flight test calibration of the accuracy for a number of aircraft. Where analytical methods are available, it may be possible to enhance the flight test data base and to track subsequent changes in the mean and variability based on geometric inspections and bench test, or any other method acceptable to the responsible authority. In the case of derivative aircraft it may be possible to use data from the parent as part of the data base, providing adequate provision is made for the changes that may contribute to difference in ASE characteristics.

*Note: This is particularly important when a derivative involves changes to the airframe structure that may alter the SSE characteristics.*

2. An assessment of the aircraft-to-aircraft variability of each error source should be made. The error assessment may take various forms as appropriate to the nature and magnitude of the source and the type of data available. It may be acceptable to use specification values to represent three standard deviations for smaller error sources; however a more comprehensive assessment may be required for those sources that contribute a greater proportion of the overall error.

*Note: This assessment is particularly important for airframe error sources where specification values of ASE contribution may not have been previously established.*

3. In many cases, one or more of the major ASE error sources will be aerodynamic in nature, such as variations in the airframe surface contour in the vicinity of the static pressure source. If evaluation of these errors is based on geometric measurements, substantiation should be provided that the methodology used is adequate to ensure compliance.
(4) An error budget should be established to ensure that the RVSM performance criteria are met.

*Note: the worst condition experienced in flight may differ for each criterion and therefore the component error values may also differ.*

(5) In showing compliance with the overall criteria, the component error sources should be combined appropriately. In most cases this will involve the algebraic summation of the mean components of the errors, root-sum-square (rss) combination of the variable components of the errors, and summation of the rss value with the absolute value of the overall mean. Care should be taken that only variable component error sources that are independent of each other are combined by rss.

(6) A statistical study based on a representative sample of measured data should provide sufficient confidence that each individual aircraft in the group would have an ASE contained within ±60m (±200 ft).

*Note: It is accepted that if any aircraft is identified as having an error exceeding ±60m (±200 ft) then it should receive corrective action.*

(g) Compliance Demonstration for a Non Groups Aircraft.

For non-group aircraft, the following data should be established:

1. Flight test calibration of the aircraft to establish its ASE or SSE over the RVSM envelope should be conducted. The flight test calibration should be performed at points in the flight envelope(s) as agreed by the responsible authority using one of the methods identified in (e) above.

2. Calibration of the avionics used in the flight test as required may be conducted for establishing residual SSE. The number of test points should be agreed by the responsible authority. Since the purpose of the flight test is to determine the residual SSE, specially calibrated altimetry equipment may be used.

3. The installed altimetry avionics equipment specification should identify the largest allowable errors.

**GM1 ACNS.E.RVSM.035 Altimetry System Accuracy**

For group aircraft; to evaluate a system against the ASE performance, it is necessary to quantify the mean and three standard deviation values for ASE expressed as ASE<sub>mean</sub> and ASE<sub>3SD</sub>. To do this, it is necessary to take into account the different ways in which variations in ASE can arise. The factors that affect ASE are:

(a) Unit to unit variability of avionics equipment.

(b) Effect of environmental operating conditions on avionics equipment.

(c) Airframe to airframe variability of static source error.

(d) Effect of flight operating conditions on static source error.

*Note: Assessment of ASE, whether based on measured or predicted data will need to consider item a to d above. The effect of item d as a variable can be eliminated by evaluating ASE at the most adverse flight condition in an RVSM flight envelope.*

Appendix A provides two examples of methods to establish and monitor static source errors.
APPENDIX A - ALTIMETRY SYSTEM ERROR COMPONENTS

1 Introduction
The purpose of this appendix is to provide guidance to help ensure that all the potential error sources are identified and included in the Altimetry System Error budget.

2 Objective of ASE Budget
The purpose of the ASE budget is to demonstrate that the allocation of tolerances amongst the various parts of the altimetry system is consistent with the overall statistical ASE performance requirements. These individual tolerances within the ASE budget also form the basis of the procedures, defined in the airworthiness approval data package, which will be used to demonstrate that aircraft satisfy the RVSM criteria.

It is necessary to ensure that the budget takes account of all contributory components of ASE.

For group approval it is necessary to ensure either that the budget assesses the combined effect of the component errors in a way that is statistically realistic, or that the worst case specification values are used.

3 Altimetry System Error
3.1 Breakdown
Figure 1 shows the breakdown of total ASE into its main components, with each error block representing the error associated with one of the functions needed to generate a display of pressure altitude. This breakdown encompasses all altimetry system errors that can occur, although different system architectures may combine the components in slightly different ways.

(a) The 'Actual Altitude' is the pressure altitude corresponding to the undisturbed ambient pressure.

(b) The 'Static Source Error' is the difference between the undisturbed ambient pressure and the pressure within the static port, at the input end of the static pressure line.

(c) The 'Static Line Error' is the difference in pressure along the length of the line.

(d) The 'Pressure Measurement and Conversion Error' is the error associated with the processes of sensing the pneumatic input seen by the avionics, and converting the resulting pressure signal into altitude. As drawn, Figure 2-1 represents a self-sensing altimeter system in which the pressure measurement and altitude conversion functions would not normally be separable. In an air data computer system the two functions would be separate, and SSEC would probably then be applied before pressure altitude (Hp) was calculated.

(e) The 'Perfect SSEC' would be that correction that compensated exactly for the SSE actually present at any time. If such a correction could be applied, then the resulting value of Hp calculated by the system would differ from the actual altitude only by the static line error plus the pressure measurement and conversion error. In general this cannot be achieved, so although the 'Actual SSEC' can be expected to reduce the effect of SSE, it will do so imperfectly.

(f) The 'Residual Static Source Error' is applicable only in systems applying an avionic SSEC. It is the difference between the SSE and the correction actually applied. The corrected value of Hp will therefore differ from actual pressure altitude by the sum of static line error, pressure measurement and conversion error, and residual SSE.
(g) The error between Hp and displayed altitude is the sum of the baro-correction error and the display error. Figure 2-1 represents their sequence for a self-sensing altimeter system. Air data computer systems can implement baro-correction in a number of ways that would modify slightly this part of the block diagram, but the errors would still be associated with either the baro-correction function or the display function. The only exception is that those systems that can be switched to operate the display directly from the Hp signal can eliminate baro-correction error where standard ground pressure setting is used, as in RVSM operations.

![Altimetry System Errors Diagram](image)

**FIGURE 1 - Altimetry system errors**

3.2 Components

Each of the system errors presented in Figure 1 and described in (c)(1) is discussed below in greater detail.

3.2.1 Static Source Error

The component parts of SSE are presented in Table 1, with the factors that control their magnitude.

(a) The reference SSE is the best estimate of actual SSE, for a single aircraft or an aircraft group, obtained from flight calibration measurements. It is variable with operating condition, characteristically reduced to a family of W/δ curves that are functions of Mach.
It includes the effect of any aerodynamic compensation that may have been incorporated in the design. Once determined, the reference SSE is fixed for the single aircraft or group, although it may be revised when considering subsequent data.

(b) The test techniques used to derive the reference SSE will have some measurement of uncertainty associated with them, even though known instrumentation errors will normally be eliminated from the data. For trailing-cone measurements the uncertainty arises from limitations on pressure measurement accuracy, calibration of the trailing-cone installation, and variability in installations where more than one are used. Once the reference SSE has been determined, the actual measurement error is fixed, but as it is unknown it can only be handled within the ASE budget as an estimated uncertainty.

(c) The airframe variability and probe/port variability components arise from differences between the individual airframe and probe/port, and the example(s) of airframe and probe port used to derive the reference SSE.

3.2.2 Residual Static Source Error

(a) The components and factors are presented in Table 1. Residual SSE is made up of those error components which make actual SSE different from the reference value, components 2, 3, and 4 from Table 1, plus the amount by which the actual SSEC differs from the value that would correct the reference value exactly, components 2(a), (b) and (c) from Table 2.

(b) There will generally be a difference between the SSEC that would exactly compensate the reference SSE, and the SSEC that the avionics is designed to apply. This arises from practical avionics design limitations. The resulting error component 2(a) will therefore be fixed, for a particular flight condition, for the single aircraft or group. Additional variable errors 2(b) and 2(c) arise from those factors that cause a particular set of avionics to apply an actual SSEC that differs from its design value.

(c) The relationship between perfect SSEC, reference SSEC, design SSEC and actual SSEC is illustrated in Figure 2, for the case where static line errors and pressure measurements and conversion errors are taken as zero.

(d) Factors that create variability of SSE relative to the reference characteristic should be accounted for twice. First, as noted for the SSE itself in Table 2, and secondly for its effect on the corruption of SSEC as in factor 2(a)(i) of Table 2. Similarly the static pressure measurement error should be accounted for in two separate ways. The main effect will be by way of the 'pressure measurement and conversion' component, but a secondary effect will be by way of factor 2(a)(ii) of Table 2.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factors</th>
<th>Error Components</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Airframe Effects</td>
<td>1) Reference SSE values from flight calibration measurements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating Condition (Speed,</td>
<td>2) Uncertainty of flight calibration measurements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altitude, angle of attack,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sideslip)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geometry: Size and shape of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airframe; Location of static</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sources; Variations of surface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contour near the sources;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variations in fit of nearby</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doors, skin panels or other</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>items.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probe/Port Effects</td>
<td>3) Airframe to airframe variability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating Condition (Speed,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altitude, angle of attack,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sideslip)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geometry: Shape of probe/port</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturing variations;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation variations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4) Probe/port to probe/port</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variability.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 1 - Static source error**
(Cause: Aerodynamic Disturbance to Free-Stream Conditions)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factors</th>
<th>Error Components</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) As for Static Source Error PLUS</td>
<td>1) Error Components (2), (3), and (4) from table 2-1 PLUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Source of input data for SSEC function</td>
<td>2(a) Approximation in fitting design SSEC to flight calibration reference SSE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Where SSEC is a function of Mach:</td>
<td>2(b) Effect of production variability (sensors and avionics) on achieving design SSEC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) $P_s$ sensing: difference in SSEC from reference SSE.</td>
<td>2(c) Effect of operating environment (sensors and avionics) on achieving design SSEC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) $P_s$ measurement: pressure transduction error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) $P_T$ errors: mainly pressure transduction error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Where SSEC is a function of angle of attack:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) geometric effects on alpha:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- sensor tolerances;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- installation tolerances;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- local surface variations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) measurement error:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- angle transducer accuracy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Implementation of SSEC function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Calculation of SSEC from input data;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Combination of SSEC with uncorrected height.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 2 - Residual static source error: (aircraft with avionic SSEC)  
(Cause: Difference between the SSEC actually applied and the actual SSE)
3.2.3 Static Line Error

Static line errors arise from leaks and pneumatic lags. In level cruise these can be made negligible for a system that is correctly designed and correctly installed.

3.2.4 Pressure Measurement and Conversion Error

(a) The functional elements are static pressure sensing, which may be mechanical, electromechanical or solid-state, and the conversion of pressure signal to pressure altitude.

(b) The error components are:
(i) calibration uncertainty;
(ii) nominal design performance;
(iii) unit to unit manufacturing variations; and
(iv) effect of operating environment.

(c) The equipment specification is normally taken to cover the combined effect of the error components. If the value of pressure measurements and conversion error used in the error budget is the worst case specification value, then it is not necessary to assess the above components separately. However, calibration uncertainty, nominal design performance and effect of operating environment can all contribute to bias errors within the equipment tolerance. Therefore, if it is desired to take statistical account of the likely spread of errors within the tolerance...
band, then it will be necessary to assess their likely interaction for the particular hardware design under consideration.

(d) It is particularly important to ensure that the specified environmental performance is adequate for the intended application.

3.2.5 Baro-Setting Error

This is the difference between the value displayed and the value applied within the system. For RVSM operation the value displayed should always be the International Standard Atmosphere ground pressure, but setting mistakes, although part of TVE, are not components of ASE.

(a) The components of Baro-Setting Error are:
   (i) resolution of setting knob/display;
   (ii) sensing of displayed value; and
   (iii) application of sensed value.

(b) The applicability of these factors and the way that they combine depend on the particular system architecture.

(c) For systems in which the display is remote from the pressure measurement function there may be elements of the sensing and/or application or sensed value error components which arise from the need to transmit and receive the setting between the two locations.

3.2.6 Display Error

The cause is imperfect conversion from altitude signal to display.

The components are:

(a) conversion of display input signal;
(b) graticule/format accuracy, and
(c) readability.

Note: In self-sensing altimeters the first of these would normally be separate from the pressure measurement and conversion error.
APPENDIX B — EXAMPLES OF METHODS TO ESTABLISH AND MONITOR STATIC SOURCE ERRORS (Group aircraft only)

1 Introduction

Two examples showing the method establish and monitor static source errors are presented below.

2 Example 1

One process for showing compliance with RVSM criteria is shown in Figure 1. Figure 1 illustrates how those flight test calibrations and geometric inspections will be performed on a given number of aircraft. The flight calibrations and inspections will continue until a correlation between the two is established. Geometric tolerances and SSEC will be established to satisfy RVSM criteria. For aircraft being manufactured, every Nth aircraft will be inspected in detail and every Mth aircraft will be flight test calibrated, where ‘N’ and ‘M’ are determined by the aircraft constructor and agreed to by the competent authority.

The data generated by 'N' inspections and 'M' flight calibrations can be used to track the mean and three standard deviation values to ensure continued compliance of the model with the criteria of CS ACNS.E.RVSM.035.

As additional data are acquired, they should be reviewed to determine if it is appropriate to change the values of N and M as indicated by the quality of the results obtained.

There are various ways in which the flight test and inspection data might be used to establish the correlation. The example shown in Figure 2 is a process in which each of the error sources for several aeroplanes is evaluated based on bench tests, inspections and analysis. Correlation between these evaluations and the actual flight test results would be used to substantiate the method.

The method illustrated in Figures 1 and 2 is appropriate for new models since it does not rely on any pre-existing data base for the group.

3 Example 2

Figure 3 illustrates that flight test calibrations should be performed on a given number of aircraft and consistency rules for air data information between all concerned systems verified. Geometric tolerances and SSEC should be established to satisfy the criteria. A correlation should be established between the design tolerances and the consistency rules. For aircraft being manufactured, air data information for all aircraft should be checked for consistency in cruise conditions and every Mth aircraft should be calibrated, where M is determined by the manufacturer and agreed to by the responsible authority.

The data generated by the M flight calibrations should be used to track the mean and three standard deviation values to ensure continued compliance of the group with the criteria of CS ACNS.E.RVSM.035.
OBJECTIVE OF INITIAL CALIBRATIONS AND INSPECTIONS

1. Establish correlation between geometric inspections and flight calibrations.
2. Establish geometric tolerances and SSEC necessary to show compliance with RVSM requirements.

Inspect each aircraft until confidence of geometric compliance is established

Geometric inspection of every Nth aircraft

Flight test calibrate every Mth aircraft

Figure 1 - Process for showing initial and continued compliance of airframe static pressure systems

Figure 2 - Compliance demonstration ground - to flight test correlation process example
Flight Test Calibration with development aircraft (see note)

For each new aircraft
Use the pre-delivery flight(s) to check the coherence of the air data information. Record data from captain’s side

Results satisfactory? No

Geometrical inspection and theoretical analysis.

Improve qualitative and quantitative rules for the surfaces around static ports and other sensors

Cruise calibrate every tbd aircraft in flight and update Means and Deviations data.

CORRESPONDING DOCUMENTS AND RESULTS
Identification of static pressure error. Establish the SSEC laws for the air data computers. Certification Cards. Demonstration of compliance with the requirements. Definition of consistency rules.

Airworthiness Assessment

Airworthiness Authorities

Aircraft manufacturer responsibility

Figure 3 - Process for showing initial and continued compliance of airframe static pressure systems for new model aircraft.

Note: The flight test installation chosen to get the calibration data will need to have an accuracy compatible with the level of performance to be demonstrated and an analysis of this accuracy will need to be provided. Any possible degradation of this accuracy will need to be monitored and corrected during the flight test period.